

# End User Training Manual

Version 5.5.1

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. Companies, names and data used in examples herein are fictitious unless otherwise noted. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Aptify.

Copyright © 2002-2015 Aptify.

Crystal Reports® is a trademark of Business Objects SA.

Microsoft® Windows®, Microsoft Excel®, and Microsoft SQL Server® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

The material contained herein is Confidential and Proprietary to Aptify and protected by non-disclosure provisions in the Aptify Master License Agreements, Aptify Non-Disclosure Agreement, Aptify Partner Agreements, and/or other non-disclosure instruments between the recipient and Aptify. All elements of the material, including but not limited to the content, presentation, and storage and delivery methods are Confidential. In the event that any element of this material is found to not be confidential in a legal proceeding, all other elements will remain Confidential.



# **Table of Contents**

## Aptify End User Training

#### Chapter 1—Aptify Basics

Objective	1.1
Introduction to End User Training	1.2
How Aptify Should be Used	1.3
Initial Aptify Display	1.4
Using Aptify	1.7
Aptify Button	1.10
Folder List	1.12
Adding Applications	1.13
Navigation Bar	1.14
Adding Services	1.17
Working with Shortcuts	1.18
Exception Log	1.21
Most Recently Used Records/Views	1.22

#### Chapter 2—Creating Records

Objective	2.1
Membership Based Records	2.1
Reading a Record Form	2.2
Record Button Bar & Shortcut Keystrokes.	2.3
Creating a New Person and Companies Record	2.4
Organizations and Employees Records	2.12
Organization Accounting	2.13

### Chapter 3—Record Management

Objective	
Finding Records	
Reviewing Record History	
Viewing Dependencies	
Using the Conflict Wizard	
Resolving Duplicate Records	
Merging Records	
Cloning Records	
Loading a Template	
Cloning Records	
Save As Pending	

#### Chapter 4—Working with Views

Objective	4.2
Understanding Views	4.2
Creating List Views	4.3
Using View Filters	4.4
Editing View Fields	4.5
Sorting Data in Views	4.7
View Formatting	4.8
Hierarchical Viewing	4.9
View Paging	4.10
Auto Refresh	4.11
Scheduling Views	4.12
Advanced View Filters	4.14
Creating Prompted Views	4.18
Using the Between Operator	4.22
Utilizing Base Views	4.25
Copying & Editing Existing Views	4.27
Grouping Data in Views	4.29
Preview Pane	4.32
Composing a Bulk Message	4.34
Topic Codes	4.37
Creating View Templates	4.39
Creating a Chart View	4.42
Creating a Calendar View	4.46
Pivot Tables	4.49
Managing and Sharing Views	4.50

### Chapter 5—Reports

Objective	5.1
Exporting a View to Microsoft Excel	5.2
How Reporting Works	5.7
Running a Standard Export Report	5.8
Running a Crystal Report	5.11

#### **Chapter 6—Contact Logs**

Objective	6.1
Understanding Contact Logs	6.2
Creating a Contact Log from the Persons Service	6.3
Creating a Contact Log Record from the Employees Service	6.5
Creating a Quick Contact Log Record from a Persons View	6.6

#### Chapter 7—Case Management

Objective	7.1
Creating Cases	7.2
Reviewing Cases	7.5

### Chapter 8—Committees

Objectives	8.1
Creating a Committees Record	8.2
Creating Committee Terms	8.3
Adding Members from a View	8.4
Adding Members from a Record	8.7
Editing Member Information	8.8

### Chapter 9—Products & Inventory

Objective	
Understanding Products	
Creating a New Products Record	
Understanding Pricing	
Adding Prices to a Product	
Creating a Related Product Prompt	9.9
Inventory Objectives	
Creating an Inventory Location	
Creating a Product Inventory Ledger	
Creating a Product Inventory Ledger Entry	
General and Prerequisites Subtabs	
Creating a Kit Product	

### Chapter 10—Order Entry

Objective	
Types of Orders	
Ordering a Product	
Creating a Multi-Line Order	
Creating a Quotation	
Ordering a Product w/Related Product Prompt	
Ordering a Kit Product	
Processing a Price Adjustment	
Making a Partial Payment for an Order	
Paying with a Purchase Order	
Marking Orders As Shipped	
Canceling an Order with the Order Cancellation Wizard	

#### Chapter 11—Payments

Objective	11.1
Making a Payment	
Multiple Payments to An Order	
A Single Payment to Multiple Orders	
Apply a Single Payment to Multiple Order Lines	11.8
Over Payments	11.10

### Chapter 12—Membership Dues & Subscriptions

Objective	12.1
Creating a Membership Dues Product	12.3
Ordering a Membership Dues Product	12.6
Manually Renewing Memberships/Subscriptions	12.8
Auto-Renewing Memberships/Subscriptions	12.10
Fulfilling the Auto-Renewal Standing Order	12.11
Cancelling a Membership/Subscription	12.12

#### Chapter 13—Campaigns

Objective	. 13.1
Using the Campaign Setup Wizard	. 13.2
Adding Prospects to a Campaign	. 13.4
Creating a Campaign Segment	. 13.6
Adding Prospects from a Campaign Segment	. 13.7
Applying a Campaign to an Order	. 13.8

#### Chapter 14—Meetings

Objective	
Using the New Meeting Wizard	14.2
Creating Meeting Registrations	
Placing a Person on the Waiting List	
Checking Meeting Registrants	14.14
Canceling a Registration	14.15
Closing a Meeting	14.17
Transferring a Meeting Registration	14.19

#### Chapter 15—Intro to Aptify's Web Interface

Objective	
Overview	
Spaces	
Use Spaces to Create a Contact Log	
Global Search	
Search for a Persons Record	
Navigating Persons Records	15.10
Order a Membership	15.12
Access a View	15.14
Summary	15.16

#### Appendix A—Awards

Objective	A.1
Defining Award Types	
Tracking Award Nominations	A.3
Tracking Awards and Incentives	A.5
Appendix B—Sales Force Automation	
Objective	B.1
Creating Opportunities Records	B.2
Appendix C—Accounting and Batching	
Accounting Information	C.1
Batching	C.2
Creating an Orders Batch	C.3
Creating a Payments Batch	C.8
Expanding a Scheduled Transaction Group	C.11
Creating a Scheduled Transactions Batch	C.13
Cash Control Batches	C.16
Appendix D—Publication Functions	
Objective	F.1
Altering the Delivery Schedule	F.2
Viewing Subscription Fulfillments	F.3
Appendix E—Expos	
Objective	G.1
Creating an Expos Record	G.3
Adding Expo Prices	G.4
Creating Floorplans	G.5
Creating Booths Using the Booth Generator	G.7
Using the Booth Combination Wizard	G.11
Linking Meetings to Expos	G.15
Taking an Order for a Booth	G.17
Canceling an Expo Order	G.20
Using the Floorplan Copy Wizard	G.22
Appendix F—SQL Value Statements for Views	
Objective	E.1
Overview	E.1

#### Appendix G—Quick Reference Guides (QRGs)

Objective	D.1
Overview	D.1
Creating List Views	D.2
Managing Views	D.4
Reports	D.7
Record Management	D.8
Contact Log.	D.10
Membership and Subscription Renewal	D.11
1 1	

Appendix H—Views Worksheet

# Chapter



# **Aptify Basics**

Objective	1.1
Introduction to End User Training	1.2
How Aptify Should be Used	1.3
Initial Aptify Display	1.4
Using Aptify	1.7
Aptify Button	1.10
Folder List	1.12
Adding Applications	1.13
Navigation Bar	1.14
Adding Services	1.17
Working with Shortcuts	1.18
Exception Log	1.21
Most Recently Used Records/Views	1.22

## Objective

In this chapter, users will learn the basic layout of Aptify:

- Introduction to End User Training
- Learning Initial Aptify Display, the Dashboard Contents
- Understanding Basic Aptify Terminology
- Connecting to Aptify
- Displaying the Folder List
- Adding Applications
- Removing Services
- Working with Shortcuts
- Viewing the Exception Log
- Using the Help Menu
- About Recently Used Records

## Introduction to End User Training

The following chapters and sample exercises will guide users through the various functions available in Aptify and how it should be used.

This course provides an overview of Aptify's basic features and will familiarize users with core functions of Aptify. It offers a solid background for users to become acquainted with the system as it introduces the basic Aptify framework, using a fictitious association's database to gain experience with a wide variety of system applications and creation of many types of data views.

With step-by-step directions, users learn how to navigate the system as well as enter and view data by partaking in sample, hands-on exercises. The focus of this End User course and manual is learning the applications by using the system, and in doing so, Subject Matter Experts (SME's) will have the knowledge to prepare to move into the next phase of the Aptify implementation process in a more efficient and effective manner.

Additionally, this manual provides information that can be utilized as a reference for Aptify users in their workplace.

Upon completion of the course, users will have learned the best practices regarding how to use Aptify for their needs and the Aptify terminology. For example, **Aptify users learn that** "persons" records are any person in their database, "products" are anything that can generate income, including a virtual product such as membership, a class or meeting, and physical products like publications.

## How Aptify Should be Used

Aptify is designed to display data from multiple departments in one database. When set up and used correctly, Aptify should be relatively simple and easy for each department to interface with on a daily basis.

#### Setting up Aptify

Aptify users are added to the database by using the Aptify User Administration Wizard. As a step in user creation (step 6 of the Wizard) each New Aptify client will copy the **Baseline** profile. Once copied, the Baseline profile can then be modified as a second, renamed profile (such as Customer Service Representative). Subsequent users with that same function should copy the new (e.g. Customer Service Representative) profile.

By copying a profile, a user inherits the previous profile's metadata. In terms of end users, metadata is composed of the Dashboards, Views, and personal Navigation settings. Each new profile should be built by adjusting the Baseline User's, copied profile. The new profile, when completed, should reflect that department's function.

By carefully setting up profiles from the Baseline profile, administrators significantly jump start the Go-Live capabilities of their end users. Those users now have focused Views, Shortcuts, and Dashboards that reflect their department/functions needs.

The setup and copying of the Baseline profile is an Administrator function, but it is critical that each department review the existing components: Dashboards, Views, Shortcuts of the Baseline profile. After reviewing, the end users can then contribute, through a series of meetings, what components need to be added.

#### **Navigating Aptify**

Aptify should be navigated by using Shortcuts, Dashboards, and Views. Users will always enter Aptify via the Home Dashboard. Users can then employ their Dashboard shortcut bar, Services shortcuts, Views shortcuts, and/or Dashboard buttons to navigate to the data. Users should utilize Prompted List Views to find data, and focused Wizards tied to Dashboard buttons, to enter new data. For a typical Aptify end user, the desired data should be no more than three clicks away. This structure is designed to make Aptify both flexible in its deployment and configuration and focused in its final design.

#### **How Aptify Works**

Aptify is Customer Relationship Software (CRM) designed for Association-based clients and is built around the following hierarchy:

- Applications
- Services
- Records
- Views
- Shortcuts
- Dashboards

## **Initial Aptify Display**

When Aptify opens, users automatically land on the **Home Dashboard**. The Home dashboard serves as a consolidated functional/viewing area that reflects the user's main tasks and data needed to use often. The Home dashboard should be configured, via the user's profile, to mirror the user's department/function within the database. For many users, this and 2-3 additional dashboard applications, will be all the access needed. Home should have a **Button Bar** tied to it that reflects the user's function. For instance, a customer service rep's Home could have a New Order, New Member, Find Member, etc., buttons, while, an accounting user's Home Dashboard might have New Order Batch button, New Payment, Find Payment buttons.

Home should also have multiple, embedded **Views** that reflect the user's most important daily functions. A customer service rep might see views titled, Orders Taken Today and/or Payments Taken Today. An accounting user might see a view of Past Due Balances over the past 30 Days or Batches Scheduled for Today.

**Shortcuts**, appear on the left-hand side, will display no matter where the user navigates. They should also reflect a focused usage on the user's main functions.

Users in the **Training database** will be working with the **Baseline** user's Home Dashboard. The Baseline profile encompasses ALL base Aptify functionality. As such, it reflects the most widespread usage across multiple departments. When users go-live with Aptify, they will encounter a more focused, configured Home dashboard suited to their needs. Training users also have an embedded Recently Used Records part in their Home Dashboard which will be explained during training and in the following chapters. Home Display:



## **Digital Dashboards**

A dashboard is a gateway for accessing information related to a particular application. Administrators can customize dashboards to provide a single interface for commonly used tasks. For example, a **Customer Management** dashboard could include targeted views of the Persons and Companies services, with buttons that open a New Company, New Person, New Contact Log Entry, Invoice Consolidation, or New Member Wizard. Dashboards should contain the most critical summary Views and the most frequently used functions (buttons) per Application. They should be each department's landing page in the system.

Customer Management					Options
New Company	New Person	New Contact Log Ent	ry Invoice Consolida	ation New Member W	izard
Persons View					- ×
🖻 🧉 🗙 🗔 🖬	Reports 🥻 👫 Add T	o List 🕙 👰 💲 🛛	🛆 📴 🗃 😒		
ID	Name/Company	Title	City	State	<u> </u>
	1 Baldwin, Aiesha/Danub	Marketing Senior Direct	Palo Alto	CA	
	2 Wade, Alexandra/U. Ha	Marketing Senior VP	Warrington	PA	
	3 Scott Athena/Akehono	Marketing VP	Sacramento	CA	-
			<b>k</b> 4	1 🔶 🐳 of 3 pages	2484 Records
Companies View					
🖹 🧉 🗙 🚛 🚹	Reports   👫 👫 Add T	o List 🗃 💁 💲	🔺 💽 🚰		
ID	Name	City	State	Employees	Parent C 🔺
	1 Danube Partners	Palo Alto	CA	78529	-
•		III			F

#### **Dashboard Buttons**

Dashboards are made up of Areas composed of **Parts**. The two most commonly used Parts are **Views** and **Buttons**. Buttons are extremely valuable because they can be tied to diverse functions and are easily viewable/accessible. Below is a list of button functions:

- New Form (Persons, Company, Member record, etc)
- Find
- Wizard simplified form entry
- Additional Dashboard
- View
- Report

#### **Dashboard Shortcut Bar**

The Dashboard Shortcut Bar enables users to easily navigate between Dashboards. It will contain a dashboard shortcut per each enabled (permitted) user dashboard.

	1	u u	/	
A) 🖹 📓 🖷 💲 🔻			Aptify - localhost - DOrtiz - I	NOT LICENSED FOR PF
🖌 🗚 Home 🚛 Shippin	ng			
Home >				
👌 Home 📓 Accounting 📢	Advertising 🛛 🐻 Awards 🛛 🛤 Campaign Manageme	nt 🛛 🔊 Case Managemen	it – 🍰 Committee Manageme	nt 🏼 🔉 Customers
Shortcuts 4	Main Dashboard - Order Entry Profile			
Services 🏦				0
Nt Persons	New Payment New Order	New Membership	New Customer	Find Customer
Companies				
Contact Log	Most Recently Used Records Most Recently	My Orders Today		
Meetings	Recent Customer Records Details		🚹 Reports 📸 📲 Add	To List 🖭 💁 💲
& Cases	📊 Ito-Yokado Co., Ltd.	ID ShipToCompany	ShipToName BillToCompany	y BillToName Order
I Orders	🚹 Ottoman			

### Shortcuts

Shortcuts are embedded Groups and Links that display initially on the left-hand side of the screen. They are designed to organize Groups of quick links per function/department for instant usage. They are most often tied to Views (specific queries of the data) and Services. They enable users to save their <u>most common</u> looks into the data. They are invaluable for quick navigation and, along with Dashboards, are the primary navigation aids in the system. Shortcuts should be configured according to the user's profile and should be tied to their specific department/function.

It is strongly recommended that Shortcuts be tied to Shared Folders that are governed by Department or Function based Administrators - see Ch. 5 for details.



# **Using Aptify**

## **Applications**

Applications are sectioned areas of the database that organize related services to functional area of the system. For example, the Customers application maintains customer information and contains **Services** such as Companies, Contact Log, Members Types, Persons, & Tasks.



## Services

Services refer to a type of record. Each service corresponds to one collection of data; for example, the **Companies** service maintains information about the companies with which a user's organization interacts. Note than when switching applications, Services remain the same. A service is technically known as an **Entity**.



#### Views

Views are displays of information from a subset of the records within a particular service. The most commonly used type of View is the List View. Users or administrators can specify the type or amount of data the view displays. For example, the list view below displays **All New Memberships added in the Last 90 Days**. Once created, views are saved within each user's profile for future use and can be distributed via shared folders to other users.

Views are the center of the Aptify system. They are used both to access data records and to communicate that data through shared dashboards and reports.

B	6	🚽 🗙 🖬	In Place E	dit 🛛 🔚 🚹 Reports  🎽 📲 Add To List 🖡	🕙 🖳 💲 📰 Preview	v \mid 🛕 📝	🤹 📰 💆	3 👜
Pe	rsor	n <mark>s by M</mark> e	mbersh	nip (Page 1 of 2)	_	_	_	_
	ID	First Name	Last Name	Address Line 1	City	Zip Code	Area Code	Phone
	1	Aiesha	Baldwin	910 Southwest Union Avenue	Palo Alto	94301	650	750-9187
	2	Alexandra	Wade	5716 South San Salvador Street	Warrington	18976	215	638-4283
	3	Athena	Scott	5197 Colleen Court	Sacramento	94203	916	491-3204
	4	Baka	Lambert	3771 Foothill Boulevard	Rock Hill	29730	803	736-2931
	14	Paige	Byrd	Jardim das rosas n. 32	Mexico City			
	15	Pamela	Wade	Rambla de Cataluña, 23	Tokyo			
	17	Rabea	Hill	13078 Main Street	Roseville	95661	510	291-1928
	20	Tadako	Cross	6137 Carmel Street	Palo Alto	94301	650	990-7129
	22	Valerie	Rodriquez	8050 West Mohican Avenue	Cupertino	95014	408	774-6130
	26	Alexander	O'Neal	Av. Brasil, 442	Campinas	04876-786		
	28	Boris	Aaronson	5ª Ave. Los Palos Grandes	Caracas	1081		
	35	Herbert	Johnson	City Center Plaza 516 Main St.	Elgin	97827		
	39	Logan	Rodriquez	67, avenue de l'Europe	Versailles	78000		

#### **Prompted Views**

The most effective everyday use of Views are **Prompted List Views**. Prompted List Views enable users to interact with the data by making choices as to the values a View (query) will use to run. The example below is of a **Persons Lookup** Prompted List View.

A Prompting	×
Last Name:	<lastname></lastname>
First Name:	<firstname></firstname>
Member Type:	<membership> 🔹</membership>
ID =	0
Company:	<company></company>
	OK Cancel

### Records

Records are entries in a service with a unique ID. Every Service in Aptify has associated records. Each Record contains multiple tabs that contain unique information concerning the particular record.

However, records do NOT have to be opened to display valuable data. Embedded, record data can be presented much more effectively and concisely using Views. In Views, users can display focused, particular data from a record. Utilizing View features, such as the Fields tab, Hierarchy tab, and the Preview Pane function (see Ch. 4 & 5), users can avoid opening densely, data packed record forms.

In the example below, only partial data of Aiesha Baldwin is viewable by opening the form. Users would need to navigate to additional tabs to see Membership and Orders information. In a correctly configured View, that data is already present via its fields and a Preview Pane.

Aiesha Baldwin's Persons record:

Persons ID: 1	
🗔 🔍 🔩 🚍 M	🖆 🗉 🦬 🕏 🗣 🚱 🔅 🖛 🔗 🕘 🖕
Name	💌 Aiesha 🛛 🖉 Baldwin
Title Marke	ting Senior Director
Company Danub	be Partners 🕺 🗡
Membe	er Type: Corporate Member Web User
Compa	Iny Member Type: Corporate Member
Maatings 1.99	Committees
Contact a De	stails 🚱 Membership 🙀 Functions 🐉 Contact Log 🔝 Orders 😃 Subscriptions
Account Manager	
	🗸 Business Address 💽 🖻 🔬 🚖 🍪 🎦
Line 1	910 Southwest Union Avenue
Line 2	
Line 3	
City, State ZIP	Palo Alto CA 🗨 94301
County S	Santa Clara
Country U	United States 📃 🗖 Bad Address
Pref. Mail Addr.	Business Address
Pref. Bill Addr.	Business Address 🔹
Pref. Ship Addr.	Business Address 🔍
F	Primary Email 🔻 Aiesha.Baldwin@demodata.aptify.com
	🗸 Phone 💽 🖻 🛅
[	1 650 750-9187 x

#### Aiesha Baldwin's data displayed in a View:

		and the second se							
	Title	Prim	ary Email	ID	First Nam	e Last Na	ame Con	npany	Stat
Marketi	na Senior Directo	Aiesha.Baldwin@	demodata.aptify	.com 1	Aiesha	Baldwin	Danube	Partners	CA
/ ID	<ul> <li>Order Date</li> </ul>	ShipToCompany	ShipToName	Ship	To Addr L	ine 1	Ship To City	Ship To	Stat
10	103 11/15/2013	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	910 Sout	hwest Unio	n Avenue	Palo Alto	CA	
10	094 11/13/2013	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	910 Sout	hwest Unio	n Avenue	Palo Alto	CA	
10		Panaperrareners		510 5000	westerne		Fallo Milco	<u></u>	
10	092 11/8/2013	Danube Partners	Aiesha Baldwin	910 Sout	nwest Unio	n Avenue	Palo Alto	CA	
	Member Type	Corporate Member			-				
Co	. Member Type	Corporate Member							
	Organization	Sampco Holdings.	Inc.			Dues Info	rmation		
						Individua	l		-
	Status	Active							
F	Functional Title					Las	t Pay Date	1/13/2013	
	Contact Rank					Dues	Paid Thru	1/12/2014	
	Directory Rank	0					Jula Data		15.0
dude Fro	om						Join Date	1/13/2013	E
Mail	E Fax	Em Em	ail 🥅 I	Directory		Termin	ation Date		

## **Aptify Button**

The Aptify Button is a centralized area for controlling several facets of the user's navigation in Aptify. Once comfortable with Aptify's uses, it may not be necessary for users to return to the Aptify button very often.

A	🗄 🙆 🚍 💲 🔻					Apti
	🖈 Home 🗖 Campai 🏉 Case M 📧 (	Commit	🍂 Custo	m 🗞 Framew	A Inventory	S Localiz
B	New					
R	Change Password					
	Print Ctrl-	нP				
C.	Print Preview					
	Page Setup					
9	Applications Click here to change your Application subscription	ns.				
5	<b>Shortcuts</b> Show/Hide the Shortcuts area.					
t:::	<u>F</u> older List Show/Hide the Folder List.					
?	Help	•				
	E <u>xi</u> t					
			<b>1</b>	Aptify On The y	Neb 🗚 Abou	It Aptify

- New: This option opens a new record in the currently selected service. (The option is grayed out if a user has an application selected.) This provides the same functionality as the New button on the Quick Access toolbar.
- Change Password: This option allows users who are not using Windows Integrated Security to change their Aptify password (when applicable).
- **Print:** Prints the view currently displayed in the main display area. Note that if printing a list view that has multiple pages, only information from the currently displayed page is printed. This provides the same functionality as the **Print** button on the Quick Access toolbar.
- **Print Preview:** Displays the current view as it will appear when printed. Note that if printing a list view that has multiple pages, only information from the currently displayed page is previewed/printed.
- Page Setup: This options allows a user to set up a view's print options.
- **Applications:** Select this option to open the application selection dialog to add or remove applications.
- Shortcuts: This option toggles the Shortcut Bar so user can add or remove it from the Aptify Desktop.

- Folder List: This option toggles the Folder List so a user can add or remove it from the Aptify Desktop.
- Help: This option provides access to the Aptify online help documentation.
  - <u>Contents:</u> Selecting this option, or clicking F1 on the keyboard, opens the Aptify 5.5 online help documentation. Note that the specific page that displays depends on what application is currently selected. The page's location is displayed in the Help Table of Contents.
  - <u>Index:</u> Selecting this option, or clicking Ctrl+F1 on the keyboard, opens the Index tab of the Aptify 5.5 online help documentation.
  - <u>Search:</u> Selecting this option, or clicking Ctrl+Shift+F1 on the keyboard, opens the Search tab of the Aptify 5.5 online help documentation.
- Exit: Closes Aptify. Users can also double-click the Aptify Button.
- Session Exceptions: This option opens the Session Exceptions viewer which records errors generated by Aptify during the current session.
- Aptify On The Web: This option opens the Aptify home page in a Microsoft Internet Explorer window.
- **About Aptify:** This option opens a window that displays information about the version of Aptify that is running.

## **Folder List**

The Folder list is a hierarchical display of Aptify's applications, services, and views. It is basically a Site Map for Aptify akin to Windows Explorer. However, 95% of the functionality found in the Folder List can be also accessed via other methods which are explained in this manual.

By default, the Folder List does not display for end users. Once accessed it should be closed since it occupies valuable display space and does not need to be used on a daily basis.

If temporarily needed, users can follow these steps to display or hide the Folder List:

1. Click the Aptify Button to display the menu.

	E Campai
	New
	Change Password
	<u>P</u> rint
C.	Print Preview
$\square$	Page Setup
	Applications Click here to change your A
5	<u>Shortcuts</u> Show/Hide the Shortcuts ar
t	<b>Folder List</b> Show/Hide the Folder List.

- 2. Select Folder List to display the Folder List.
  - Users can pin/unpin the Folder List by clicking the **pin icon** in the upper right corner. The Folder List slides to the left when not in use.

Users can change the Folder List's width by placing the cursor on the right border of the Folder List's frame, until the cursor becomes a double arrow. Users may then drag the edge of the Folder List to the left or right.

## **Adding Applications**

Applications are a logically grouped collection of services that correspond to a job function, and appear below the **Home** heading in the Folder List. Users can add and remove applications to save space on screen; removing an application does not delete any data. It would be unusual for a user to need to add/delete Application access as this should be done by a SA.

Follow these steps to select only applications needed:

1. From the Aptify Button menu, select Applications.

A	1		
	A Home		
	New		
	Change Password		
3	ProcessFlow <u>U</u> ser Value		
	Print	Ctrl+P	
C.	Print Preview		
	Page Setup		
61	Applications		
-	Click here to change your Application subs	criptions.	

- 2. The system displays the Applications dialog box.
- 3. From the left-hand window, double-click the **Organization Management** application to move it to the right-hand window. Users can also use the central arrows to perform this function.



- 4. To sort the applications in alphabetical order, click the **Application** column header (Name) in either the left-hand or right-hand window. Clicking once sorts the applications in descending order, twice sorts the applications in ascending order.
- 5. Clear the **Show in Ribbon Bar** checkbox across from Organizational Management. Users may not even need the use of the Ribbon Bar.
- 6. Click OK and Organization Management is added to the Dashboard Shortcut bar.

## **Navigation Bar**

The **Navigation Bar** is a bread crumb bar for navigating to applications, services, and views. It provides a visual indicator of where a user is within Aptify, and may be used in place of the Folder List, which was one of the main navigation tools in previous versions of Aptify. To browse Aptify using the Navigation Bar, click the arrow that appears to the right of an item to display its available options.

P	D	B	🔄 💼 💲 후							Apt	ify - dl01113
X		A	Home 🕖 Case	e Manageme	ent	M Customers	<u>81</u>	Organiz	ation Management	2	Product Maintenance
		Nev	v Find	New F	ind	New Find	New	Find	New Find		New Find
	Acco	unt Ma	nager Functions	Compani	es	Contact Log	Fur	nctions	Member Status Ty	pes	Member Types
Shortcut	수 Home										
41	1	ID 👻	First Nam	e		Last Name			Company		
- Tel		2486	Gabriela		Miller			Incline Cry	yogenics Co., Ltd. 👘		Manager, Advertisir
ler		2418	Pablo		Burges	s		POT Air Pr	roducts, Inc.		Associate, Consultir
EF.		2378	Christina		Scott			Ahold USA	A, Inc.		Senior Director, Inf
		2339	Naina		Aarons	ion		Harvard University		Manager, Advertisir	
		2144	Valerie		Terry			Incline Cry	yogenics Co., Ltd. 👘		Customer Support [
		2076	Brooke		Beck			POT Air Products, Inc.		Sales Senior Directo	
		2036	Mia		Baldwir	1	Abold USA		Abold USA, Toc.		Einance VP

For example, clicking the arrow to the right of the **Home** heading displays all the **Applications** a user has available. Users can specify which applications appear in the Navigation Bar through the Applications dialog. System administrators may also determine which applications are available to the user.



The Navigation Bar displays **Services** to the right of an Application heading. These services contain specific data types and are logically grouped together within a particular application.



The Navigation Bar displays the active **Views** and **View Folders** to the right of a Service heading. The system also displays the list of views and folders available in the main display area when a service heading is selected.

🔀 Home 🔸 💐 Custor	ners 🔸 航 Persor	is 🔻	🛒 Persons living in CA
🛃 🗙 🛛 🗱 In Place Edit	l 🔙 l 🗽 📊 Repo		Accounting and Finance Topic C
is living in CA			All
First Name	Last Name	<u>112</u>	In List
Gabriela	Miller		List
Pablo	Burgess		Membership in CA
Christina	Scott	<u> </u>	
Naina	Aaronson	<u>1110</u>	Persons living in CA
Valerie	Terry		Prompt for Company
Brooke	Beck		Shared Views
Mia	Baldwin		

Use the Navigation Bar to navigate from screen to screen within the main display area. Use the arrow buttons and drop-down lists to the left of the Home heading to perform the following:



- Back: return to the previous screen in the main display area.
- Forward: move forward one screen; this is the same as the Forward button on the main toolbar.
- **Go To:** from a drop-down list, selects a location previously visited during a session to reload that screen.

Advanced users can type directly into the Navigation Bar and enter a location to access if they know the path where the item can be found. To type a location, click to the <u>right</u> of the last item in the Navigation Bar. After typing the desired path, click the **Enter** key.

A user can then navigate to previously typed views, services, or applications, by using the Previous Location drop-down list located on the right side of the Navigation Bar. Selecting a location from this list reloads the previously visited screen during this session. Note that only locations that have been manually typed will appear in this drop-down list.

Customers\Companies
 Customers\Companies
 Customers\Contact Log
 Case Management
 Home

## **Adding Services**

**Services** appear under Applications and are logically grouped together to correspond to a job function. Services are represented by icons under applications. A user can add or remove services from applications to save space and make it easier to find a particular service.

Follow these steps to remove services from an application. (The steps below refer to removing steps from the **Customers** Service, but they can be applied to any desired service).

- 1. In the Navigation Bar, click the arrow to the right of Home
- 2. From the Application list that displays in the Navigation Bar, select Customers
- 3. From the pop-up list, *right click* the Customers heading and select Services....

A	Home	F I	÷.	Customers			
_			-			Services	Ctrl+S
	Accountin	g	-	Advertising	0	Awards 🛛 📺	j Campaign 🞝

• The Services dialog displays. The services that currently appear in the Folder List are listed in the right-hand column.



- 4. Do one of the following to move the Education service to the right-hand column:
  - Double-click the Education entry.
  - Click once to highlight the **Education** entry and click the >> button.
- 5. Repeat the previous step to move the **Functions** services to the right-hand column.
- 6. Click **OK**.

## **Working with Shortcuts**

Shortcuts are one of the most critical areas for end users to utilize to quickly navigate to desired data. Shortcuts enable users to instantly open a service or view. Shortcuts should be created and loaded as part of a profile, but there will be the need to include additional Shortcut Groups and Shortcuts by end users.

Follow the steps below to add a Shortcut Group and then a Shortcut itself.

### Creating a Shortcut Group for Views of data

- 1. *Right click* the **Shortcut Bar** (under the **Services** group) to activate the area.
  - (Shortcuts to Services is the top level group on the Shortcuts bar to the left.
  - Users can add as many Shortcuts to Views and Shortcut Groups as desired.
- 2. From the **pop-up list**, select **Add Group**.
- 3. In the Name field, enter My Views

Please name the shortcut group.	ОК
	Cancel
	Calicel

- 4. Click **OK** the new group appears at the bottom of the Shortcuts area.
- 5. Drag the **My Shortcuts** Group to the top of the page under the **Services** Shortcut Group.

	Shor	tcuts		4
	-	I/Os Gr	ed by Name	^
		All Pro	Issues	
	•	I/Os Gro	ped by Name	
	Me	eting Ma	agement 🏾 🛠	
	102	Future M	etings	
	ŵ.	Status P	Meeting	
	1	Meeting	by Date Range	
	Exp	o Manag	ement 🌣	
		Booths p	er Floorplan	
	1	Occupier Floorpla	Booths Per	
	Acc	ounting	*	
	P	Batch Re Days)	iew (Last 90	
	<b>A</b>	Batch by	D	
	32	Find Cas ID	Control Batch by	
	<b>3</b> 2	Find Cas by Depo	Control Batches it Date	
	<b>3</b> 2	Unappro Batches	red Cash Control	
		Anticipa Recogni	d Revenue on (Next 90 D	
		Find STs	by BatchID	
	1	Orders F Batching	ady For GL	
	ø	Find Bat Date	h by Effective	
	<b>A</b>	Schedule Batch Dr	l Transaction I Down	
	P	Payment	Batch Drill Down	
	-W	Order Ba	ch Drill Down	
	P	Find Bat Account	nes by g Period	
$\leq$	My	Shortcut	s al	

### **Adding a Shortcut**

- 1. On the left side of the screen, from the **Services** shortcut group, click the **Persons** Service.
- 2. All the Persons Views and folders will display on the right.



- 3. Double click <u>ANY</u> existing **View** the View will run if a prompt displays, click on the cancel button. Notice that the **View's** name will also display in the top **Navigation Bar**.
- 4. Click on the **My Views** shortcut group heading created earlier. (Once selected, it will have a selection rectangle). Users **MUST** select the targeted shortcut group prior to selecting the shortcut to be added.
  - It may contract click again to expand
- 5. In the Navigation Bar, *right click* the displayed View name.
- 6. Select **Add to Shortcut Bar.** Note the addition of the view name under the shortcut group. Repeat to add another view to the My Shortcuts.



#### **Removing a Shortcut**

- 1. In the My Views shortcut group, *right click* the shortcut view.
- 2. From the **pop-up list**, select **Remove Item**.
- 3. Click **OK** to confirm the deletion.

Shortcuts	<del>Р</del>	Folder
General	*	A F
		8
1	Add Item	
All P	Remove Ite	m
Companies	*	

#### **Removing a Shortcut Group**

- 1. Right click any shortcut Group.
- 2. From the **pop-up list**, observe the **Remove Group** but do NOT remove the group just created.



Removing a Shortcut Group also removes the shortcuts in that group.

**Note:** For the transfer of large numbers of shortcuts into a shortcut group, users can open the **Folder List** and drag and drop the shortcut into the desired group. This may be more effective when transferring a large number of shortcuts from a newly connected to Shared Folder.

## **Exception Log**

If a problem occurs while using Aptify, the system can record information about the error encountered in the <u>Session Exceptions</u> viewer; this is found by clicking the Aptify Button and selecting this option from the drop-down list, (bottom right).

This information can be very helpful in aiding an administrator to determine what caused the error.

Users can track session errors as they occur by leaving the Session Exceptions viewer open on the desktop, with the **Auto Refresh** option selected. With this setting, errors are automatically added to the Session Exceptions viewer.

When the **Manual Refresh** option is selected, new errors do not appear while the viewer is open until the user clicks the **Refresh** button.



To ensure the Sessions Exceptions viewer remains in the foreground of the desktop, click the pin icon. When Auto Refresh is selected and the viewer is pinned to the desktop, users can easily monitor whenever a new error is logged.

## **Most Recently Used Records/Views**

Aptify's main dashboard includes the Most Recently Used dashboard component which provides a quick and easy method to access records/views that are used on a regular basis. This component displays a list of **Records** and a list of **Views** that a user **recently opened or updated** and can display up to <u>50 items</u>.

Simply double-click an entry in the Most Recently Used Records window to open the corresponding record or view.

Most Recently Used Records Most Recently Used Views
👬 Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners
General Course
🖹 Sampco Holdings, Inc.
🦉 Inside Sales 401-1
🖞 Channel Sales 401-1
📲 Channel Sales 401-1
📲 Channel Sales 401-1
🐒 Channel Sales 401-1
📲 Direct Sales 401-1
🐒 Direct Sales 401-1
🐒 Direct Sales 401-1
🐒 Direct Sales 401-1
🐔 Web Marketing 401-1
🐔 Web Marketing 401-1
🐔 Web Marketing 401-1
🐔 Web Marketing 401-1
🐐 International Marketing 401-1
🐒 International Marketing 401-1
🐒 International Marketing 401-1
🐒 International Marketing 401-1
🖞 Direct Marketing 401-1
🖉 Diroct Markoting 401-1

# Chapter



# **Creating Records**

Objective	2.1
Membership Based Records	2.1
Reading a Record Form	2.2
Record Button Bar & Shortcut Keystrokes	2.3
Creating a New Person and Companies Record	2.4
Organizations and Employees Records	2.12
Organization Accounting	2.13

## Objective

In this chapter, users will understand how to:

- Read a Record Form
- Create a Companies Record
- Create a Persons Record

## **Membership Based Records**

Aptify recognizes that for most clients, **Companies**, and **Persons** records will be the most frequently entered and interacted with records in the database. For some clients, Aptify's naming convention will be an adjustment - Companies and Persons, may not equate to what a client knows as Customers or Member records. For others, it will be the fact that the Aptify Database will track ALL TYPES of Companies and Persons, not just Members.

Below are a few basic definitions according to Aptify:

**Companies** — The businesses with whom the organization (Client) has a business relationship. These companies can be customers, vendors, maintenance contractors, etc. They are the businesses that need to be tracked for various reasons.

**Persons** — People with whom the organization/association (Client) has a relationship, for example, association members. Most notably these would encompass members, who the user tracks membership related data; these can include vendors, hotels, POCs, etc.

## **Reading a Record Form**

A record refers to a specific group of data in Aptify, while a record's form is the display of that data. All record forms share many common features.

Service	Name and Red	ord ID Data Control Bar
	Persons ID: 1	
		) # ≅ ⊒ 🖏 ⊗ !≈ 🐂 ∰ © ≑ !≈ ⊘ ! @ 🕖 🗩
	Name	Aiesha J Baldwin
Link Box	Title Mark	eting Senior Director
	Company Danu	be Partners A
	Memb	er Type: Non-Member
Tabs	Comp	any Member Type: Corporate Member
$\rightarrow$	Contact	committees of Analysis Awards — Pictures / Comments Attachments =
	Account Manager	
		🗸 Business Address 🔍 🗣 📾 🍙 🕄 😫 😭
	Line 1	910 Southwest Union Avenue
	Line 2	
	Line 3	
	City, State ZIP	Palo Alto CA 💌 94301
	County	Santa Clara
	Country	United States
	Pref. Mail Addr.	Business Address 💌
	Pref. Bill Addr.	Business Address 💌
	Pref. Ship Addr.	Business Address
		Primary Email 🔹 Aiesha.Baldwin@demodata.aptify.com 🛁
		√ Phone 🗨 🛍 管
		1 650 750-9187 x

The basic layout of a form includes:

- Service Name and Record ID Displays the record's service and ID number.
- Data Control Bar Located at the top of the form; is used for saving, closing, printing and launching functions such as wizards.
- Link Box Multi-function field that can:

1. Create a blank record for the linked service

- 2. Link to an existing record (by multiple search parameters)
- 3. Open the record listed in the field
- 4. Enable the user to search for records in the linked service
- Tabs Contain additional fields or views of data.

## **Record Button Bar & Shortcut Keystrokes**

Aptify Records contain the same button bar regardless of the type of record accessed. The standard button bar and its functions are shown below:



Keyboard Shortcuts exist throughout Aptify.

Commonly used shortcut keystrokes:

New Record - Ctrl + N Save Record - Ctrl + S Save and Close - Ctrl + Shift + S Save and Create - Ctrl + N Print Record - Ctrl + P Find Record - Ctrl + F Record History - Ctrl + R Help - F1 Refresh - F5

## **Creating a New Person and Companies Record**

For <u>Training</u> purposes, students/users in the Aptify End User class will create two records: a **Company** and **Persons** record. These records will be referenced and built upon for the remainder of the class and use of this class/manual.

The **New Persons Wizard** is used to enter this information. Users can directly enter information into a record, but it is recommended they use/have wizards created for ease of entry.

#### **Contact Information**

- 1. In the Navigation tool bar, click the **Customers** Application.
- 2. On the Customers Dashboard, click the New Person Wizard button.
- 3. Users will enter information to create a new person record. Note that the default is a business address.
- 4. In the Name field, enter a <fictional person name>.
- 5. In the Line One Address for this person, enter any address
- 6. In the Zip Code field, enter a familiar Zip Code, click the Tab button.
  - Completing the Zip Code field auto-fills the **City**, **State**, and **County** fields
  - Zip Code will take International Postal Codes where available.
- 7. Click the Next button.

💩 New Person Wizard		
	Record the Person's contact info below	
	Name (prefix, first, middle, last, suffix)	
	Jimmy Anderson	
	Busin	ness Address 📃 🖻 🍙 🗟 😫 🎦
	Line 1	855 Ring Road
	Line 2	
	Line 3	
	City, State ZIP	Plympton MA 02367
	County	Plymouth
Contact Info Company	Country	United States
Title Function Referral and Credit	tle Function eferral and Credit	
Referrar and create		
Help	Cancel	Back Next Finish
### **Company Information**

- 1. Click the blue **Primary Company** link.
  - Clicking a blank, linked field opens a new record for the associated service
  - Users can do this when a new, unique record is needed and not a link to an existing one.
- 2. In the Name field, enter a unique <Company Name>.
- 3. In the Line 1 field, enter a unique <Line One address> as the company's main address.
- 4. In the Zip Code field, enter a unique Zip Code.
- 5. Enter a Main Phone number.
  - For Phone & Fax numbers,: the 1st field is the Country Code (1 for the U.S.), the 2nd field is the three-digit area code, and the 3rd field is the seven-digit number.
  - Use the Phone drop-down list to toggle between the phone and fax numbers.

💩 New Person Wizard					
	Enter the person's p	rimary company and a	any secondary or previous compa	nies	
SPAN .	Directory	🔥 Companies ID:	350	L.	
	Other Companies		M 🞽 🗉 🎲 🤹 🖦 🧤	🗄 🕲 🗘 🖛 🖉 🙆 🚺	Ŧ
	BBXM	Nam	e Gelato Inc		
	Title Compan	Parer	<u></u>	r	M ×
		Company Typ	e Retail		
		Account Manage			
Contrast Jafa		Subscriptions	Committees Analysis	S 📝 Comments Attachments	s
Company		Contact			
Title Function Referral and Credit			✓ Street Address	T 🖻 💁 🔄 🔇 🕮 🗎	]
		Line 1	11 Samoset Street		
		Line 2			
Help	Cancel	City, State ZIP	Plymouth	MA 02360	
		County	Plymouth		
		Country	United States	💌 🔲 Bad Address	
			🗸 Main Phone	🗖 🗈 🛅	
			1 456-2345 x		
			Main Email 🔻		
		WebSite			•
		[ <b></b>			

#### Adding New Addresses

For reference with the following exercises, turn to page 2.10 to see a summary of the Address Tool Bar.

1. To add additional addresses associated with the business, click the **Add New Address** button located next to the address drop-down list.

	s 🍇 Committees 👩 Analysis 🍃 Comments 🛛 Attachments
Contact 🦪	Details 🖗 Membership 👬 Persons 🧞 Divisions 🐲 Contact Log 🔲 Orders
	Street Address 💽 🗈 🎯 🗟 🔇 🗎
Line 1	742 Evergreen Terrace
Line 2	
Line 3	
City, State ZIP	Springfield CA 💌 95370
County	Tuolumne
Country	United States

- 2. In the Enter the new name for the address field, enter Supply Warehouse.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. A blank Contact area of the Companies record is returned.
- 5. In the Address Line 1 field, enter 4565 Leland Ave.
- 6. In the ZIP Code field, enter 95842, click Tab, city and state will auto-fill.

Line 2	
Line 3	
Lity, State ZIP	Sacramento CA 🗾 95842
County S	Sacramento
Country U	United States
1	Main Phone 💽 🗈 🛅
1	
P	Main Email 🔽
WebSite	•
_	

- 7. Select the **Details** tab.
- 8. From the Credit Status drop-down list, select Approved.
- 9. In the Credit Limit field, enter 10,000.
- 10. Save and Close the Companies record (tab, top left).
  - Note that the **Company** name now appears in the **Primary Company** linked field of the wizard.

• (Steps above could have been written into the wizard as well).

Other tabs will become available once the record is saved. Users will investigate these tabs progressing through the remainder of the class/manual.

11. Click the **Next** button of the Wizard.

#### Title and Function Info

Now that a company record is created and a person record is associated with it, a user can specify more information about the person.

- 1. In the Title field, enter Customer Service Representative.
- 2. In the Primary Function field, enter Customer Support.
- 3. Scroll down, check the **Sales** checkbox below; this designates Sales as an additional function.
- 4. Click the Next button.

New Person Wizard	Enter their curren the grid below	t title and prim	ary job function.	Other functions c	an be selected	X from
	Ti	Title Customer Service Representative				
	Primary Functi	on Customer S	upport			X
	i 🚅 i 🧇					
		Selected	Start Date	End Date	Comments	-
Contact Info	Consulting Services					
Company Title Function	Customer Support					
Referral and Credit	Engineering					-
	Finance					=
	Information Technology					
	Marketing					
	Research					
	Sales	<b>V</b>	12/4/2013			Ŧ
Help	Cancel	Bac	k Nex	t	Fini	ish 🛛

- 5. Sampco should default into the Organization field.
- 6. In the Referred By field, enter a 1 and click Tab (Aiesha Baldwin will auto-fill).
- 7. From the Referral Type drop-down, choose Friend.
- 8. From the Credit field drop-down, select Approved.
- 9. In the Amount field, enter 5000, click Tab.
- 10. Click the **Finish** button.

11. From the Wizard pop up box, click the No button (to not repeat process).

ſ	💩 New Person Wizard		<u> </u>
		If the person was referred to our organization by someone else, record that h they can receive the appropriate benefit. Don't forget to give the person some they can use POs and partial payments.	ere so e credit so
		Organization Sampco Holdings, Inc.	<b>**</b> ×
		Referred By Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	** 🗙
		Referral Type Friend	-
	Contact Info Company Title Function P Referral and Credit	Credit Status Approved  Amount \$5,000.00	
1	Help	Cancel Back Next	Finish

- 12. In the Navigation Bar, click Home
- 13. Above the Recent Customer Records column, click the Most Recently Used Views.
- 14. Click back on the Most Recently Used Records.
- 15. The new Persons record will be listed.
- 16. Click the Persons record to open it.
- 17. Note the company information associated with this person is shown, and by clicking on the address field drop-down, one can see the additional address criteria as well.



### **Adding New Addresses**

For the Persons record, the <u>Contact tab</u> is the <u>default</u>. A users' Companies Address is automatically used as the Business Address. To add a person's home address:

- 1. From the address drop-down list, choose Home Address.
- 2. For the **Person**, enter a new <home address>.
- 3. This **Persons** record will now have two different addresses configured, the **Pref. Mail Addr.** which is the Business Address and the home address.
- 4. Click **Save** button (top left). Once the record is saved, a check mark will appear next to address types that have an associated record.
- 5. To add an additional address for example, a persons' vacation address during a certain time frame, click the Add New Address button.
- 6. In the Enter the new name for the address field, enter Vacation.
- 7. Click OK.
- 8. In the Address Line 1 field, enter 47 Truman Annex Circle.
- 9. In the **ZIP Code** field, enter **33040**, click **Tab**.
- 10. In the address tool bar, click the Setup Default Address and Date Ranges button.

🎊 Meetings 👹 🏹 Contact 🦪 D	Committees 🏭 Analysis etails 🖗 Membership 🕯	Awards 📜 Pictures 🎑 Comments Att Functions 🐲 Contact Log 📰 Orders 🛃	achments Subscriptions
Account Manager		×	
	Vacation	- i 🗿 🕤 🤇 🗿 🚺 i	
Line 1	47 Truman Annex Circle		
Line 2			
Line 3			
City, State ZIP	Key West	FL 💌 33040	
County	Monroe		
Country	United States	🔽 🔲 Bad Address	

- 11. From the Address box, (seen below) setting column drop-down list, select Date Range.
- 12. Enter a Start Date of 12/17/20xx. (xx is current year)
- 13. Enter an End Date of 12/28/20xx.

1	A	Address Default Setting	s			<b>—</b>
		Address	AddressType	Setting	Start Date	End Date
	۲	Business Address		Never		
		Billing Address		Never		
		Home Address		Never		
		PO Box Address		Never		
		Vacation		Date Range	12/17/2012	12/28/2012

14. Click OK and Save and close the record.

### **Address Bar**



The Addresses tool bar allows users to manage address additions and deletions.

The Contact tab of a Companies or Persons form can stores all the addresses for a company or person. The addresses are available when selecting a **Ship To** or **Bill To** address on an Orders form.

The Company Address record includes an **Address Type** field, which links to the Address Types service. An administrator can add or edit Address Types as necessary from the Administration - CRM application.

If the address is temporary, users can enter a **Start** and **End Date** to indicate a time frame for when this address is valid.

Also, users can place a check mark in the Use As Preferred During Date Range box to indicate that this is the address to use for the Company during the time period specified.

## **Bad Addresses**

Users can label an Address as a **Bad Address** by utilizing the Bad Address checkbox in the Address section of a Persons record.

Users can then create Views of records with designated bad addresses and call/email those users for corrections.

🎆 Meetings 🏼 🏭	Committees 🚹 Analysis	Awards 🐏 Pictures 🍃 Comments 🛛 Atta	achments
🏹 Contact <i> D</i>	etails 🐌 Membership 🙀	Functions 🐉 Contact Log 🔝 Orders 🛃	Subscriptions
Account Manager		× K	
	Vacation	🔽 🖹 🔐 🗟 🔇 💷 🎦 🖓	
Line 1	47 Truman Annex Circle		
Line 2			
Line 3			
City, State ZIP	Key West	FL 🗨 33040	
County	Monroe		
Country	United States	💌 🔲 Bad Address	

# **Organizations and Employees Records**

The **Organization Management** application uses **Organizations** and **Employees** records to store information about the internal structure of both the user's organization and its employees.

The Organizations and Employees records do NOT store <u>external customer</u> information. This is contained in the **Customers** Application as **Companies** and **Persons** records.

First time users of Aptify often confuse Organizations with Companies and Employees with Persons. Most end users of Aptify will **NOT** need to access either Organizations or Employees; those areas will usually only be accessed by IT and Accounting for initial entry, and HR for occasional maintenance.

**Employee** Records will be set up initially in the database by Administrators. Admins will then use the Aptify User Administration Wizard to link the appropriate Licenses, Profile, Security, and Employee record together. This structure will then create an audit trail where the employees actions are tracked throughout their use of the system.

For the purposes of standard End User training, each user in class will be known as Baseline User.

# **Organization Accounting**

Aptify enables users to track the General Ledger (**GL**) entries for Accounting via the Organizational structure that is set up during the user's configuration. When an Organization (i.e. the company that is buying and will be using the Aptify software) is set up, that company becomes the **parent organization of all GL entries**. This setup enables standard accounting or multi-entity accounting.

## **Multi-Entity Accounting**

Aptify can create GL entries to segregate funds as necessary between a parent organization and its subsidiaries.

- For example, an association may run a **Foundation**, which is a separate business entity, so the organization would use multi-entity accounting to ensure that the funds are associated with the proper entity.
- A user specifies "Due To" and "Due From" GL accounts to establish debits and credits accounts between a parent organization and one or more subsidiaries. This is for accounting purposes only and does not affect orders or payments from customers.

## Setting Up an Organization's Multi-Entity Accounting

- 1. Create the Organization and its subsidiaries (as needed).
- 2. Enable the Generate Inter-Company Entries option on each entity's Accounting tab.

♪ Organizations ID: 11	• •
🛃 😼 🐴 🗙 🚔 🔛 🔄 🥘 🥸 🖘 🧊 🦉 😳 💷 🔗 🛞 🕕	Ŧ
Name XYZ Organization Parent	
Topic Codes 📝 Comments Attachments	
🖏 Contact 👯 Organization 🙀 Employees 👯 Divisions/Subsidiaries 🔛 🗛	counting
Functional Currency US Dollar	aa 🗙
Exch. Rate Gain Account	$\mathbb{A}$ $\times$
Exch. Rate Loss Account	$\mathbb{A}$ $\times$
Conversion Adj. Account	$\mathbf{A}$ $\times$
Generate Inter-Company Entries	
GL Accounts Inter-Company GL Accounts	
🖹 📸 🗙   🛗 Find   🚡 🎓 🌷 🌉 🔞	
Type GL Order Level GL Account GL Account Name	

3. Establish GL Accounts between a parent organization and a subsidiary:

#### Two sets of accounts

- From parent organization perspective, "Parent Due to Subsidiary" and "Parent Due from Subsidiary"
- From subsidiary perspective, "Subsidiary Due to Parent" and "Subsidiary Due from Parent"

Inter-Company GL Acco	unts Record
General	
Related Organization	₩×
Due To GL Account	<b>₩</b> ×
Due From GL Account	× 44
Comments	
	OK and New OK Cancel

- 4. Add these accounts to each Organization's Inter-Company GL Accounts tab.
  - For example, a user would add the "Parent Due to Subsidiary" and "Parent Due from Subsidiary" to the Parent record.

		GL Account	Description	Debit Amount	Credit Amount		
	▶	1005	Total Cash Inflow From Payment	\$50.00			L
	Γ	1106	Credit A/R For Payment to Order ID:165, Line		\$50.00		L
	F	0052	Amount Due From Parent Organization(6) To Subsidiary Organization(7)	\$50.00		+	$\vdash$
Ч		6001	Amount Due To Subsidiary Organization(7) From Parent Organization(6)		\$50.00		$\vdash$

- 5. Specify organization-specific A/R and Sales accounts for products linked to that parent/ subsidiary.
- 6. Create Payment types that use organization-specific Cash account.
- 7. Aptify automatically generates GL entries between organizations as necessary.
- In this example, a customer purchases a subsidiary product from the parent organization, so GL entries are created to specify how the payment should be accounted for between the entities.

# Chapter

3



# **Record Management**

Objective	3.1
Finding Records	3.2
Reviewing Record History	3.4
Viewing Dependencies	3.6
Using the Conflict Wizard	3.7
Resolving Duplicate Records	3.9
Merging Records	3.10
Cloning Records	3.11
Loading a Template	3.12
Cloning Records	3.11
Save As Pending	3.12

# Objective

In this chapter, users will learn how to:

- Work with records
- Resolve Record Conflicts
- Duplicate records using multiple methods

## **Finding Records**

In this section, users will utilize the Find Items function to locate records in a service.

- 1. In the top tool bar, *right click* the Persons service and select **Find Items...** from the list. The Find Items dialog box will appear.
  - The **Find Items** dialog box can also be opened by clicking the <u>binoculars button</u> in the Services or View toolbar. Locate the binoculars button.



- 2. From the Find-Persons box, click on the <u>blue field</u> labeled **Persons search**. This will bring up a box with additional filters for selection.
- 3. From the Field drop-down list, scroll down to select Company Name.
- 4. From the Operator drop-down list, select Contains.
- 5. In the Value field, enter danube.

Aptily Find - Persons			
F <u>i</u> lters Fi <u>e</u> lds <u>R</u> esults			Find
Field	Operator	Value	Cancel
		-	
		<b>_</b>	<b>T</b>
		<b>_</b>	-
		-	-
		-	-

- 6. Click Find.
  - A new View window appears that displays the records whose company contains the word *danube*.
  - A record from this window can be opened by double-clicking it.

A	🗡 Result of Find on Persons													
B	🖹 🧭 🗙 🔚 📊 Reports 🕌 📲 Add To List 🗐 💁 💲 🛕 📴 🗊													
Re	sult	of Find on Persons	_	_										
	ID	Name/Company	First Name	Last Name	Company	•								
	1	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	Aiesha	Baldwin	Danube Partners									
	109	Rodriquez, Jessica/Danube Partners	Jessica	Rodriquez	Danube Partners									
	343	Tate, Luke/Danube Partners	Luke	Tate	Danube Partners									
	451	Byrd, Theodore/Danube Partners	Theodore	Byrd	Danube Partners									
	685	Wade, Brian/Danube Partners	Brian	Wade	Danube Partners	-								
	793	Jensen, James/DanubePartners	James	Jensen	Danube Partners	=								
	1027	Douglas, Sabrina/Danube Partners	Sabrina	Douglas	Danube Partners									
	1135	Neal, Alexander/DanubePartners	Alexander	Neal	Danube Partners									
	1369	Thompson, Emily/Danube Partners	Emily	Thompson	Danube Partners									
	1477	Holland, Mia/Danube Partners	Mia	Holland	Danube Partners									
	1711	Lambert, Ulyses/Danube Partners	Ulyses	Lambert	Danube Partners									
	1819	Valdez, Aiesha/Danube Partners	Aiesha	Valdez	Danube Partners									
	2053	Aaronson, Edward/Danube Partners	Edward	Aaronson	Danube Partners	-								
-			and the t	~										
					16 R	16 Records								

- 7. From the results of this find, click the **Find Items** button (binoculars) to open a new Find Items window.
- 8. Under the column headings, on the first line, in the **Field** column, enter **Company Name**; in the **Operator** column, enter **Contains**; and in the **Value** column, enter **danube**.
- 9. On the second line, in the Field column, enter First Name; in the Operator field, enter Exactly Matches; in the Value view, enter jessica.
  - Search lines in the Find Items dialog are separated by AND operators.

Aptify Find - Persons					
Filters Fields <u>R</u> esults					Find
Field		Operator	Value		Cancel
Company Name	•	Contains 💌	danube	-	
First Name	•	Exactly Matches	jessica	•	
				-	
	•			•	
				-	
	•	<b>•</b>		-	

- 10. Click Find.
  - Aptify displays the Persons record for Jessica Rodriquez. Aptify displays the record itself rather than a results screen since only one record fulfilled the search criteria entered.
- 11. Close the view.

# **Reviewing Record History**

In this exercise, a user will use **Record History** to view previous versions of a record.

- 1. Open the **Persons** record, if not already opened.
- 2. At the bottom of the form, change the **Phone** drop-down from **Phone** to **Fax**.

Primary Email 🔻	
Phone Phone	
1 215 252-1111	x

- 3. In the Fax field, enter 1 212 555-5555.
  - In the first **Fax** field (Country Code), enter **1**.
  - In the second Fax field (Area Code), enter 212.
  - In the third Fax field (Phone Number), enter 555-5555.
- 4. Click Save.
- 5. Change the **Fax** number from **555-5555** to **123-4567**.
- 6. Click Save.
- 7. In the record's toolbar, click the **Record History** button.



8. Observe the Record History window that displays.

	/ History of Persons Record ID: 2534 [O'Connell, Dave/Aptify]					
Date Updated Who Updated		Who Updated	Changes			
	۲	4/26/2012 3:32 PM		Fax Phone changed from 555-5555 to 123-4567		
		4/26/2012 3:32 PM	Asmith	Fax Record created		
		4/26/2012 3:31 PM	Asmith	Record created		
	3С	hanges		View Data Restore Close		

- 9. **Resize** the columns of the **Record History** window as needed to display additional information.
  - Move the cursor between a column header until it becomes a left/right arrow.
  - Hold down the mouse button and drag the cursor left or right to expand the width of the columns.

- 10. In the top field, notice the version of the record that shows the original fax number entered (555-5555).
- 11. <u>IF</u> users had Admin privileges, the **Restore** button would be active. This would create a new version of the record that resets it to the previous version. In other words, this process reverts the Fax field to 555-5555.
- 12. Click Yes to continue.
- 13. Otherwise, click Close to close the Record History window.
- 14. Close persons the record.

## **Viewing Dependencies**

In this section, users will learn how to View Dependencies- records that contain information that are dependent, or related to, another.

In the top Navigation tool bar, *right click* **Persons** service and select **Find Items**.

- 15. To open Persons record ID #268, enter 268.
- 16. Click the Show Dependencies button in the record's data control bar.

😠 🗞 🍇 💼 🕺 🖆 🗉 🧞 🐼 🕞 🐂 🎭 🛞 🔅 🖛 🔗 🔘 🖕

- 17. Observe the Persons Record Dependencies window that displays.
  - This window contains a list of all records, or **dependencies**, that reference the Persons record and require its information. The list includes multiple Orders, Payments, etc. Because dependencies must link to another record, Aptify will not allows users to delete any record that has dependencies. If a user attempts to delete a record with dependencies, the system will present an error message. For example, a company record with related persons records may not be deleted.

Entity	SubType	Field	Record ID	Has	Record Name
🖉 Scheduled Trans	Top Level	Bill To, Subscriber	1292		1292
Payments		Person	1555		1555
Payments		Person	1840		1840
Orders	Top Level,	Ship To, Bill To, Order	4519		4519
Orders	Top Level,	Ship To, Bill To, Order	3851		3851
🖥 Opportunities		Person	200		Exhibitor - Ito-Yokado Co., Ltd.
🖥 Opportunities		Person	535		Advertising - Ito-Yokado Co., Ltd.
👼 Opportunities		Person	870		Furniture - Ito-Yokado Co., Ltd.
👸 Opportunities		Person	1205		General - Ito-Yokado Co., Ltd.

- 18. Close the Record Dependencies window.
- 19. Close the **Persons** record.
- 20. If prompted, click **No** to confirm closing the record without saving changes.

# **Using the Conflict Wizard**

Within Aptify, two users may work with the same record simultaneously. However, it is possible that the changes made by the users to the record may conflict with each other. Therefore, the Conflict Wizard will launch automatically whenever one user attempts to save a record that has been modified by another user since the form was opened.

The **first screen** of the Conflict Wizard lists the changes that user2 made to the record since it was opened by user1.

,	Aptify Conflict Wizard							
	The record you are trying to save has been changed by another user. After you loaded the record, the following changes were made by other users.							
		Date Updated	Who Updated	Changes				
		5/21/2012 1:09:18 PM	Asmith	Business Address Line 1 changed from 11 Oak St. to 982 September Court				
	•			•				
4	_							
			Cancel	Back Next Finish				

On this screen, user1 can click **Next** to continue or **Cancel** to close the wizard and return to the form without saving the changes by user2.

The **second screen** of the Conflict Wizard lists the changes that user1 has made to the record. On this screen user1can click **Next** to continue, **Back** to return to the previous screen, or **Cancel** to close the wizard and return to the form without saving changes by user1.

Aptify Conflict Wizard	
You made the following changes since opening this record:	
Phone Phone changed from 252-1111 to 252-3781	·
	*
Cancel Back	Next Finish

The third screen of the wizard gives user1 three options for resolving the conflict:



- 1. Save changes by user1 and integrate the changes from the other users that do not conflict with the changes user1 has made.
- 2. Save user1's changes and override all of the changes made by other users.
- 3. Do not save user1's changes and keep the changes made by the other users. If this option is selected, user1's changes are still displayed in the form but they are not saved to the record. (User1 will need to close the record without saving.)

Click **Finish** after one of these three options is selected. **Back** can also be clicked to return to the previous screen, or **Cancel** to close the wizard without making any changes.

# **Resolving Duplicate Records**



An organization can customize Aptify to check for possible duplicates when users save new records. This helps avoid a situation where the same person has multiple records within the system.

By default, Aptify provides a duplicate checking component for the Persons service. This is provided for demonstration purposes so an organization's developers can create their own duplicate-checking components as necessary.

When a message is received about a possible duplicate, choose one of the following options:

- 1. **Yes:** Click Yes to view the record or records that may be duplicates of the record a user is attempting to save. If only one potential duplicate exists, the matching record will open. If more than one duplicate exists, Aptify will display a view that lists the matching records.
- 2. No: Click No to save the new record without seeing the potential match.
- 3. Cancel: Click Cancel to return to the record without saving.

If duplicate records exist, a user can merge them into single record

- A user can specify which record and which fields should survive the merging process
- Any dependent records are automatically linked to the surviving record
- A user may not have the ability to merge records, since this is often configured by a system administrator
- · Can vary from service to service and from user to user

# **Merging Records**

A	Aptify Merging To	- • •		
	Field Name	Record ID# 2534 (0)	Default ID# 2529 (24)	
►	CompanyID	117	117	
	Title	Senior Training Manager	Training Manager	
	CountryCodelD	222	222	
	FaxCountryCode	1		
	FaxAreaCode	212		
	FaxPhone	123-4567		-
	Add Record Remo	ve Record Show All Fields		Merge Cancel

- 1. Follow these steps to merge records:
- 1. Create a view that contains all of the records that a user wants to merge.
- 2. Select the records to merge (hold down the CTRL key to select multiple records).
- 3. *Right click* within the view and from the pop-up list, select Merge Records.
- 4. If there are additional records to include in this merge, click **Add Record** and use the Find Items utility to locate them (one at a time).
- 5. To remove a record from merge, highlight the record's column & click Remove Record.
- 6. By default, the Merge Tool only shows the fields that have different values across the records selected. To show all of the fields in the record, click the **Show All Fields** button.
- 7. Determine which record to keep. The other records will merge with the record selected. To select the record (also referred to as the default record), highlight the record's column, *right click* and choose **Set Record as Default** from the pop-up list.
- 8. Determine which field values desired. To select a field value in a record other than the default record, place the cursor in that field and *right click*. Then, select Set Field as Default from the pop-up list. The field will appear with a yellow highlight (within the Merge Tool; items that will persist in the merge record are highlighted in yellow).
- 9. When ready to merge the records, click Merge.
- 10. Click **OK** to begin the Merge process.
- 11. Click **OK** to commit the Merge results to the system.

# **Cloning Records**

- Makes a copy of an existing record
- Useful if a user needs to create multiple records that share many of the same values
- Reduces data input time and can increase accuracy

#### To clone a record:

- 1. Open an existing desired record to clone.
- 2. From the Data Control Bar, click the Clone button.
- 3. The new, clone of the original record will open. Make the desired edits and Save.

🌮 Contact	De Contact Log ID: 5665						
🛃 🔩 🖏	📋 M 😭 🗉 🐎 💲 🖦 🧤 🖣 📢 🛟 🕫 🖉 🌒						
Date	11/4/2009						
Description	Sent message regarding overdue invoice						
Туре	Voice mail Creator						
Category	Collections						
Direction	Outbound						

# Save As Pending



Sometimes it is beneficial to be able to make certain changes to records that take effect at a future date. For example, a company is moving locations and will have a new address as of the beginning of next year. The Save As Pending option saves the record as pending, allowing a user to modify records prior to a specific date, and then applies those changes automatically on the scheduled date. When a pending change exists, it automatically enables the Alerts button prompting the user that there are pending changes on this record. A user can also edit and delete pending changes as necessary.

## Saving Changes as Pending

Follow these steps to save changes to a record that should be applied on a specific date in the future:

- 1. Open the **Persons** record created previously. (Double click Home, go to Recently used records column, find persons record created)
- 2. Change the Street Address.
- 3. In the toolbar, select the Save As Pending button.
- 4. In the Scheduled Date drop-down, select a month from today.



- The default value is the current date and time.
- 5. Click the **OK** button to close the dialog.
  - The form repopulates with the currently saved data (the pending changes are removed since they are not applicable yet).
  - The Alerts icon turns red to notify all users that pending changes exist for record.
- 6. After the pending change's specified date and time passes, the Aptify Scheduled Tasks system automatically updates the record with the appropriate changes. Once the pending changes have been saved to the record, the Alerts icon no longer appears in red.

## **Modifying Pending Changes**

Follow these steps to modify changes that have been saved as pending:

- 1. Select the Alerts button.
  - When a pending change exists for a record, the Alerts button becomes active, notifying the user that there are pending changes on this record.



2. Expand the **Pending Changes** hierarchy by selecting the plus sign (+).



3. Double-click the pending change to be modified to open the associated **Alert Detail** dialog. This enables the user to see information about pending changes applied to the record.

Alert Detail	
AddressID Line1 changed from 11 Oak: St. to 982 September Court	*
	Ŧ
Check here to clear the alert. Edit Delete Close	

- 4. Click the **Edit** button.
  - The record is refreshed with the pending changes specified in the Alert Detail Dialog.
- 5. Change the Address to 1000 Northwest Union Avenue and select Save As Pending.
  - Even if a user decides not to make any modifications to the existing pending change, they still need to select the **Save As Pending** option to reset the Scheduled Date.

**Note:** the modified changes can be viewed by selecting the corresponding change from the Alert List. Follow these steps:

- Select the Alerts button.
- Expand the **Pending Changes** hierarchy by selecting the plus sign (+).
- Double-click the appropriate pending change to view the modified changes.

## **Deleting Pending Changes**

Follow these steps to delete a pending change:

- 1. Select the Alerts button.
  - When a pending change exists for a record, the Alerts button becomes active prompting the user that there are pending changes on this record.
- 2. Expand the **Pending Changes** hierarchy by selecting the plus sign (+).
- 3. Double-click the appropriate pending change to view the modified changes.
- 4. Click the **Delete** button.

# Chapter



# 4

# **Working with Views**

Objective	4.2
Understanding Views	4.2
Creating List Views	4.3
Using View Filters	4.4
Editing View Fields	4.5
Sorting Data in Views	4.7
View Formatting	4.8
Hierarchical Viewing	4.9
View Paging	4.10
Auto Refresh	4.11
Scheduling Views	4.12
Advanced View Filters	4.14
Creating Prompted Views	4.18
Using the Between Operator	4.22
Utilizing Base Views	4.25
Copying & Editing Existing Views	4.27
Grouping Data in Views	4.29
Preview Pane	4.32
Composing a Bulk Message	4.34
Topic Codes	4.37
Creating View Templates	4.39
Creating a Chart View	4.42
Creating a Calendar View	4.46
Pivot Tables	4.49
Managing and Sharing Views	4.50
Connecting to Shared Folders and Views	4.51

# Objective

In this chapter, users will learn how to:

- Create and Edit Views
- Sort and Arrange Views
- Understand different types of Views
- Compose Bulk Messages
- Manage Views

# **Understanding Views**

Views are the most critical function for finding and communicating data in Aptify. Views are similar to reports, in that they display a subset of data, but unlike reports, views allow users to open records and work with the data.

They are the function most interacted with in the database as well. Views are spread throughout all of Aptify and every Service in Aptify will have multiple Views pulling from it.

Any view that is valuable to a user should be embedded as part of their dashboard and/or saved as a shortcut. If a view is used daily for a user to see large portions of data, it belongs in a dashboard. If used interactively to find data daily/weekly, it should be made a shortcut.

Views are organized displays of data that represent subsets of the records contained in a Service. A user defines filters which define the data displayed in the view. Once created, views can be saved within each user's profile and used again by selecting the view.

### Four Major View Types

#### List Views

- Most common used view in Aptify approximately 90% of all Views are List Views
- Contains a list of records, formatted using columns and rows

#### **Chart Views**

- Excellent for inclusion in dashboards, especially at the Executive level
- Groups data based on specified criteria and displays as a chart or graph

#### **Calendar Views**

- Good for Meetings, Committees, Education, etc. that utilize date based functions.
- Organizes records using time data, and displays them on a calendar

#### **Pivot Table Views**

- Power view option that provides interactive reports to summarize large amounts of data
- Table information can be expanded or collapsed depending on the level of detail needed

# **Creating List Views**

Follow these steps to create a List view:

- 1. Select the **Persons Service** shortcut.
- 2. In the Navigation Bar, right click Persons and select Create View from the list.

A Home	Aptity
Customer Management	Perconc New Persons Record Ctrl+N s Cam Find Items Ctrl+F
Shortcuts Services	Create Folder Perso Connect to Shared Folder
🗱 🎎 🕻 🛅 😁 🗿 🔤 📶 🥵 💸 🙀 Customer/Member Searches	Create View Paste View

- 3. Give the View a name or title. In the **Name** field, enter **Persons in CA**. (Give explicit description for others who might also use it).
  - This exercise will create a View of Persons in CA
  - Later in this chapter the exercise will add additional Filters and edit the name.
- 4. Leave List View selected from the View Type drop-down list.

X View Properti	ies - 'CA Student Members'					
<u>C</u> onfiguration <u>G</u> eneral <u>F</u> ilters	<u>G</u> rouping <u>A</u> dvanced (SQL) ↓ Fiel <u>d</u> s ✓ <u>S</u> orting Fo <u>r</u> mat <u>H</u> ierarchy <u>P</u> aging ✓ Auto <u>R</u> efresh Schedulin <u>a</u>					
Name	Persons in CA Base View Description					
View Type	ist View 💌					
Base View	Persons					
Description	Persons in CA					
	_					
	×					
Save Template	Save Template OK Cancel					

# **Using View Filters**

Aptify lets users locate specific information within a database by filtering data to present in views. Filtered views will only show a view of data based on specific criteria. For example, a user could create a filtered view that displays only the following records:

Customers who work in the state of California.

## **Create a Basic Filtered View for Persons**

- 1. On the **Persons in CA** view properties in progress, select the **Filters** tab to create data record filter criteria.
  - **Persons** appears in the **Service** column by default. The Service column drop-down list shows a set of services that are linked to the selected service.
- 2. From the Field column drop-down list, select State:
  - First, click in the **Field** column. A drop-down arrow appears.
  - Start typing State. After entering a few letters, the field will fill in automatically.
- 3. From the **Operator** column drop-down list, select **Exactly Matches**.
- 4. In the Value column field, enter CA.
  - The State field uses the two-letter abbreviation.

1	/ View Properties - 'Persons in CA'							
	Scheduling Configuration Grouping Advanced (SQL) General Filters Dields Sorting Format Hierarchy Paging Auto Refresh							
Service Field Operator Value					Value			
	Persons		State	Exactly Matches	CA			
		Persons						

5. Click **OK** to show the view created.

**NOTE:** Even though the Field designation above reads "State", it actually is pulling the **Work State** of the Person. Work State, because it is the default value on the Persons form, is only indicated by the text, "State".

A Persons record's Home State would be designated by the text, "Home State".

#### Add to Shortcuts Bar:

To add this view to the user's shortcut bar, click on the "My Shortcuts" bar to activate it, then from the top Navigation bar, *right click* the Persons in CA and select **Add to Shortcuts Bar** 

# **Editing View Fields**

This exercise illustrates how to select which fields display in a view, how to rename a view's field headings, and how to change the order in which fields appear. By default, views display a list of selected fields. Users can customize which fields a view displays using the **Fields** tab in the view's properties screen.

- 1. From a selected view, on the <u>View button bar</u>, click the **Properties** button, then select the **Fields** tab.
- 2. In the Selected Fields column, select from Address Line 1 to Primary Function.
  - Hold down the CTRL key to select multiple, separated fields in the list.
  - Hold down the Shift key to select multiple, contiguous fields in the list.
- 3. Double-Click on the selected fields, or use the left facing arrow, to move them to the **Available** Fields column.
- 4. Scroll through the Available Fields column values to the **Department** field.
  - **Tip:** clicking the 'Field' column heading in the Available Fields area will sort the displayed fields in alphabetical order.

/ View Properties - 'CA Student Members'							
<u>Configuration</u> <u>Grou</u>	ping Advance	ed (SQL)	ι,				
<u>G</u> eneral <u>F</u> ilters	Fiel <u>d</u> s $\sqrt{-3}$	orting F	o <u>r</u> mat <u>H</u> iera	archy 🛛 Paging 🗸	Auto <u>R</u> efresh S	chedulin <u>a</u>	Ι.
Available Fields:				Selected Fields:			
Field	Data Type	Disp 🔺		Fleiu	Data Type	Display	
MiddleName	Text	Midd		ID	Number	ID	
Cuffix	Text	Cuffic		FirstName	Text	First Na	
Surrix	Text	Surri.		LastName	Text	Last Na	<b>F</b>
CompanyID	Number	Com	→	Company	Text	Compa	
CompanyID	Text	Com		Title	Text	Title	
Companyivame	Text	Com	-	MemberType	Text	Membe	Ŧ
PreferredAddress	Text	Pref.		CompanyMembe	Text	Membe	
PreferredBillingAdd	Text	Pref.		Department	Text	Departi	
PreferredShipping/	Text	Pref.					
Address	Number	Busii		4 III			
		P				P	
Save Template OK Cancel							

- 5. Double-click **Department** to move it to the Selected Fields column.
- 6. Use the Up arrow on the right side to move Department below the Company field.
  - When the View is displayed, the <u>selected fields</u> will display left to right as the Column Values.

archy Pagin	g Auto <u>R</u> efres Selected Fields: Field ID FirstName LastName Company Title MemberType CompanyMembe Department	b Scheduling C Data Type Number Text Text Text Text Text Text Text Text	Display Name Display Name D First Name Last Name Company Title Membership Member Type Department	ing T
-	۰ III			
			ОК Са	ncel

- 7. In the Selected Fields column, use the scroll bar to view the **Display Name** column, then click in the row for **MemberType** to edit its Display Name.
- 8. Enter Membership in the field provided.
  - Click OK. Once the View is displayed (OK clicked), Membership will display as the column header, not MemberType.

## Sorting Data in Views

Within a view's properties' screen, users can specify multiple sorting criteria.

- 1. From the Persons in CA view, on the <u>View button bar</u>, click the **Properties** button. Select the **Sorting** tab.
- 2. From the Sort By field's drop-down list, select Member Type.
  - Leave the Direction set to Ascending.
- 3. In the first **Then By** field, select **Company**. (Select the *CompanyName* or *Company* field from the drop-down list rather than the CompanyID field. Set **Direction** to **Descending** for this field.
- 4. In the second **Then By** field, select **LastName**. Set **Direction** to **Descending** for this field.

View Properties - 'Persons in CA'					
Auto <u>R</u> efresh  Scheduling <u>Configuration</u> <u>G</u> rouping <u>A</u> <u>G</u> eneral <u>Filters</u> Fiel <u>d</u> s <u>Sorting</u> <u>For</u> mat <u>H</u> ier	Advanced (SQL) archy 🖌 Paging 🗸				
Sort by Direction Member Type Ascending					
Then by Direction Company Then by Direction Then by Direction					
Last Name  Descending Then by Direction					
Save Template	OK Cancel				

- 5. Click **OK** to save the changes to see the modified view on the screen.
- 6. Scroll through records displayed in view and confirm that records are sorted as specified.
  - Corporate Members are listed before Individual Members, who are listed before Non-Members. Within each Member Type, companies are listed in reverse alphabetical order. For each company, persons are listed in reverse alphabetical order. Note that setting the sort order within a view by selecting a column and clicking the Sort Ascending or Sort Descending button will override the sorting order specified in the View Properties screen.
  - WARNING If a user chooses to change a Views sort by clicking on a column in the display of the View (after clicking OK), that sort will OVERRIDE the previous sort designated under the Sort tab.

## **View Formatting**

Aptify enables users to change many aspects of how Views results look. Users can change the text's size, font type, color, bolding, underlining, and italicizing.

- 1. From the view, on the View button bar, click the Properties button.
- 2. Select the **Format** tab.
- 3. Place a check mark in the Use Custom Formatting for this View box to display the formatting options.

/ View Properties - 'Persons in CA'	
Schedulin <u>a</u> <u>C</u> onfiguration <u>G</u> rouping <u>A</u> dvanced (SQL) <u>G</u> eneral <u>Filters</u> Fiel <u>d</u> s ✓ <u>S</u> orting ✓ <sup>Fo<u>r</u>mat</sup> <u>H</u> ierarchy <u>P</u> aging ✓ Auto	<u>R</u> efresh
Jse Custom Formatting for this View Wrap Caption	
Font Row Color Field Level Formatting	
Font Tahoma Settings	
Size 8.0000 Underline	
Text Color	
Save Template OK	Cancel

- 4. Select the **Row Color** sub-tab.
- 5. Click the ellipsis (...) button next to Alternate Color.
- 6. Select a desired color as the alternate color.
- 7. When displayed, the View will have alternating colors which will enable the rows to be distinguished more easily.

# **Hierarchical Viewing**

Aptify has a powerful feature called hierarchical viewing. This feature enables users to drill into subsets of data directly through the view results set. Users can select what subsets of data they want to drill into through the Hierarchy tab. To set up this feature:

- 1. On the View button bar, click the **Properties** button, then select the **Hierarchy** tab.
  - Aptify provides numerous hierarchial choices and multiple subsets of data which can be selected.
- 2. Select the <u>first</u> of the four **Orders** listed by scrolling down the list and selecting the checkbox next to it.
- 3. Click OK.
  - The view results return; in the far left-hand column, when the cursor is over a record a + sign displays; this indicates the record can be selected and its associated orders displayed

Persons in CA (Page 1 of 2)						
	Member Type	Name/Company				
+	Individual Member	Garner, Dalton/Akebono Cryogenics Incorporated				
	Individual Member King, Timothy/Apple Computer, Inc.					
	Individual Member	Mann, Madison/Apple Computer, Inc.				

- 4. Move the cursor along the far left-hand column to see + signs appear for each record. Move to a record and click the + sign in the left-hand column.
- 5. The Orders results frame will display.

Persons in CA (Page 1 of 2)							
24	Member Type Name/Company						
	Indi	ividual Member	Garner, Dalton/Ake	Garner, Dalton/Akebono Cryogenics Incorporated			
	Inc	ividual Member	King, Timothy/App	le Computer, Inc.			
-		ontact Log (Contact Log)	)				
		ID	Date	Description	Creator		
		3215	1/2/2010	Spoke with contact reg	arding future needs, call	Phone	
		3216	12/2/2009	Left Voice Mail		Voice ma	
		3217	11/2/2009	Left Voice Mail		Voice ma	

- 6. Minimize the Orders data by clicking the minus (-) signs.
- 7. Observe the other changes made to the View thus far: Filters, Fields, Sorting, and Formatting.

# **View Paging**

The View Paging settings determine how many records appear on one screen at a time. Follow the steps below to configure View Paging.

- 1. Reopen the Persons in CA View.
  - On the View button bar, click the **Properties** button.
  - <u>OR</u> From the display list, *right click* on the View and select **Views Properties** (near bottom of list).
- 2. Click **OK** and look in the bottom right-hand corner of the screen. A number should display for the amount of records in the view page.

	23	Xia	Robinson		Joist Pack	agin	g Technologies Co	m.	S	
	25	Abraham	Rodriquez		MJG Tech	noloc	y Incorporated		S	
	32	Francois	Hale		N Porterh	ouse	FiltrationManage	ement AE	S	
	33	Gagan	Scott		Pacific Rin	n Con	nputers		SC .	÷
٠									Þ	
				<b>k</b>	<b>4</b> 1	-	of 2 pages	327 Re	core	ds

- 3. Multiple pages of results should display. Users can control how many pages the view will return by setting up paging preferences.
- 4. Open the View Properties.
- 5. Select the **Paging** tab.
- 6. Notice the default is to allow for paging with 250 results per page. Change the number of results per page to 50.
- 7. Click **OK**. The user should now have more pages of results.

As a rule, most users should NOT change the number of results displayed per page. This function can be tied by administrators to a Record Set Query as well whereby users will be limited in the actual number of records they can return overall. For instance, if a user with a pre-set, Record Set Query amount of 500 tries to return a View of 1000+ records, they will only receive the first 500 of the records in two, 250 results filled pages.

# **Auto Refresh**

Users can set how frequently they want the system to refresh the view's results. This is helpful when they need to keep a view open for long time periods and there is a lot of activity that will change the results over time. This function should be combined with opening the view in a separate window *(right click* in the Navigation Bar on the View).

- 1. Re-open **Persons in CA.** In the View button bar, click the **Properties** button, then select the **Auto Refresh** tab.
- 2. Change the Auto Refresh Mode drop-down from None to Interval Based.
  - When the mode is changed to Interval Based, an Interval (Minutes) field appears that can be changed to specify how often the view is refreshed.

/ View Properties - 'Persons in CA'
General, Filters V Fiel <u>d</u> s V Sorting V Fo <u>r</u> mat <u>H</u> ierarchy V Paging V Auto <u>Refresh</u> Scheduling <u>C</u> onfiguration <u>G</u> rouping <u>A</u> dvanced (SQL)
Auto Refresh Mode Interval Based
Interval (Minutes) 15.0000
Show Refresh Interval Timer On View
Save Template OK Cancel

- 3. Change the interval to 1 minute and check the **Show Refresh Interval Timer on View** box. This will enable a viewable countdown until the next auto refresh in the lower left-hand section of the view page.
- 4. Click the **OK** button to return to the view results and note the timer at bottom left.

	Individual Member	Holland, Baka/Dole Food Company, Inc.			
	Individual Member Burgess, Naina/EK Techno Business Inc.				
	Individual Member	Cross, Tadako/EK Techno Business Inc.			
	Individual Member	Lowe, James/EK Techno Business Inc.			
		i 🗰 🐳 1 🔿 🐳 of 2 p			
Nex	t Auto Refresh - 14:34				

# **Scheduling Views**

Users can schedule a view to automatically output its information once or on a recurring basis. When the view runs, Aptify can save the view as an Excel file or a Crystal Report and then print it on a network printer, or send it to multiple recipients as an email attachment.

For example, a sales manager can create a view that displays all orders taken that day. Then, they can schedule the view to run nightly and send the results to the sales department in an email message.

- 1. On the View button bar, click the **Properties** button.
- 2. Select the **Scheduling** tab.
- 3. In the Schedule This View To Run Automatically box, place a check mark.
- 4. For the Frequency Type, enter Weekly.

/ Create View
Hierarchy Paging 🗸 Auto Refresh
Scheduling Configuration Grouping Advanced (SQL) General Filters Fields 🗸 Sorting Format
Schedule This View To Run Automatically
Schedule Output Options Advanced Scheduling
Delete the task if it is not scheduled to run again.
Frequency Type Weekly
Start Date Tuesday , November 08, 2011 ▼ Start Time 9:00:00 AM 🚖
End Date 🥅 Tuesday , November 08, 2011 👻
Schedule Task Weekly
Every 1 🖕 Week(s) Every 1 🖕 Hours 🔻
V Mon 🕅 Tues 🕅 Wed 🕅 Thur Until 9:00:00 AM 🚔
Fri Sat Sun
Load Template OK Cancel

5. Select the **Output Options** tab.
| / Create View   |
|---|
| Hierarchy Paging V Auto Refresh<br>Scheduling Configuration Grouping Advanced (SQL) General Filters Fields V Sorting Format |
| Schedule This View To Run Automatically   |
| Schedule Output Options Advanced Scheduling   |
| Output Modes Email  |
| Output Types View   |
| Directory   |
| File Name   |
| Recipients Email Properties   |
| 🖹 📸 In Place Edit 🛛 🗙 🕌 Find 🛛 🖝 🎓 🐥 🚇 🎯  |
| Email Type  |
|   |
| 0 Items   |
| Load Template OK Cancel   |

- 6. In the Output Modes drop-down, leave Email selected.
- 7. From the Message Systems field, enter Outlook Email
- 8. Observe the **Output Types** (click the arrow to see options), but keep View as option.
- 9. Resize the View Properties window to full screen, and from that screen's toolbar, underneath the **Recipients button**, click the **New Record** button.
- 10. Observe the Available fields, then click Cancel.
- 11. Select the Email Properties sub-tab; observe the available fields.
- 12. Select the Advanced Scheduling tab.
- 13. Users can set the **View** to run on a separate **Application Server** to reduce the processing load on the main server.
- 14. Click Cancel.

### **Advanced View Filters**

#### **Create a View with Two Filters**

- 1. From the top Navigation Bar, *right click* **Persons in CA**, select **Properties** (or Properties button, if open).
- 2. Edit the Name and Description fields to read: San Francisco Student Members
  - If **Persons in CA** was previously made a **Shortcut**, the user must delete that shortcut since the parameters have changed, and add the new **San Francisco Student Members** as a shortcut.
- 3. Click the **Filters** button.
- 4. Keep **Persons** as the **Service** and the rest of the <u>first row</u> of the **Filters** dialog.
- 5. For the <u>second row</u>, keep Persons as the Service, from the **Field** drop-down list, select **Member Type**.
  - Quickly type "**Mem**" to jump to the Member Type field
  - Or click the **Field** column header to sort alphabetically, scroll to Member Type

**NOTE:** The first Member Type that displays is the numeric value, referring to the member type record's ID. For this exercise, scroll down to the text value. This enables the filter to use the actual name of the member type, "Student". Aptify recommends using the ID whenever possible to reduce search time.

- 6. From the Operator drop-down list, select Exactly Matches.
- 7. From the Value drop-down, select Student Member.
- 8. Third row: Persons is the Service, for Field, select City
- 9. From the Operator drop-down, select Exactly Matches
- 10. From the Value drop-down, select San Francisco.

/	View Properties - 'Persons in CA'								
	Configuration Grouping Advanced (SQL)								
	<u>G</u> er	nera <u>F</u> ilters	Fiel <u>d</u> s 🗸 Sorting	Format <u>H</u> ierarchy	Paging 🖌 Auto <u>R</u> efr	esh Schedulin <u>a</u>			
		FilterID	Service	Field	Operator	Value			
	Þ	1	Persons	State	Exactly Matches	CA			
L		2	Persons	Member Type	Exactly Matches	Student Member			
		3 Persons		City	Exactly Matches	San Francisco			
	4 Persons								

11. Click **OK** to return to display the View. Note the fields listing student members.

#### **Editing Filter Logic**

Users can also create Views that use an **OR** operator so the view can display records where, for example, State is CA *or* Last Name begins with D.

- 1. Either from the view, select the **Properties** tab, <u>OR</u> from the top Navigation Bar, *right click* the **San Francisco Student Members** view and select **View Properties**.
- 2. Select the **Filters** tab.
- 3. Click the Show Advanced button.
  - The Filter Logic box reads: 1 AND 2 AND 3.
- 4. Change the second AND to OR so the Filter Logic reads: 1 AND 2 OR 3.

/ View Properties - 'Persons in CA'								
Configuration       Grouping       Advanced (SQL)         General       Eilters       ✓       Fields       ✓       Sorting       Format       Hierarchy       Paging       Auto Refresh       Scheduling								
	FilterID	Service	Field	Operator	Value			
►	1	Persons	State	Exactly Matches	CA			
	2	Persons	Member Type	Exactly Matches	Student Member			
	3	Persons	City	Exactly Matches	San Francisco			
	4	Persons						
Filt	Filter Logic 1 AND 2 OR 3							
Hide Advanced Reset Filter Logic Prompt Wizard 🕼 Optimize Sub-Queries								
Sa	ive Template.	•		ОК	Cancel			

- 5. Click **OK** to display the view.
- 6. Enter the number of records that appear in the view: \_\_\_\_\_ (see bottom right).
- 7. From the San Francisco Student Members view, select Properties.
- 8. Select the Filters tab to return to the View's Filters screen.
- 9. Click the Show Advanced button.
- 10. Click the **Reset Filter Logic** button.
  - The Reset Filter Logic button returns the logic to its default settings.
  - The Filter Logic changes to 1 AND 2 AND 3 (since AND is the default operator).
- 11. Click **Cancel** to return to the Aptify desktop.
- 12. Close the view.

### Using the In-List Operator

- 1. From the Navigation bar, *right click* the **Persons** service and select Create View.
- 2. In the Name field, enter In List.
- 3. Click Filters.
- 4. From the Field Column drop-down list, select State.
- 5. From the Operator drop-down list, select In List.
- 6. To the **Value** field, enter Illinois, Massachusetts, Oregon, and Pennsylvania using one of the following methods:
  - Manually enter the list of states; separate each state with a comma: IL, MA, OR, PA
  - For fields that have pre-defined values, a user can click the **ellipsis (...)** button and select the items to include from the list of possible values.

🗡 Multiple Sel	ections									×
Available Values	s:					Sele	cted Values:			
Code	Name						Code	Name		
ND	North Dako	United States				►	IL	Illinois	United States	
NE	Nebraska	United States					MA	Massachus	United States	
NH	New Hamp	United States					OR	Oregon	United States	
NJ	New Jersey	United States					PA	Pennsylvan	United States	
NM	New Mexic	United States			>>			1		
NV	Nevada	United States								
NY	New York	United States		-						
OH	Ohio	United States								
ОК	Oklahoma	United States		-						
PR	Puerto Rico	United States								
PW	Palau	United States								
RI	Rhode Isla	United States								
<b>↓</b> (	South Carol	United States	Þ	Ŧ		•				Þ
								0	Can	cel

- 7. Click **OK** to return the view display.
- 8. From the "In List" view, click Properties. Click Filters.
- 9. From the Service drop-down list, select Persons in the second row of the Filters dialog.
- 10. From the Field drop-down list, select ID.
- 11. From the **Operator** drop-down list, select > (greater than).
- 12. In the Value field, enter 100.
- 13. Click **OK** to generate the View on the Aptify desktop.
- 14. The view now displays the Persons records whose State is IL, MA, OR, or PA *and* whose record ID is greater than 100.

#### **Using the Proximity Operator**

- 1. From the top Navigation Bar, *right click* the **Persons** service and select **Create View**.
- 2. In the Name field, enter Proximity of within 50 mi of 20006.
- 3. Click Filters.
- 4. Keep **Persons** as the **Service**.
- 5. From the Field drop-down list, select Zip Code (text).
- 6. From the **Operator** drop-down list, select **Proximity**.
- 7. Move the cursor over the Value field, and click the down arrow that appears. It becomes an ellipsis. (...) Click the ellipsis.

A		reate	e View							x
	Scheduling Configuration Grouping Advanced (SQL)									
	<u>G</u> er	neral	<u>F</u> ilters	Fiel <u>d</u> s 💊	<u>Sorting</u>	Fo <u>r</u> mat	<u>H</u> ierarchy	Paging 🗸	Auto <u>R</u> efresh	
			Service		Fie	eld	Op	erator	Value	
	Persons		Zip Code		Proximity		Proximity Search	])		
	Persons							3		

- 8. The Proximity Search Wizard displays.
- 9. Click Next at the introduction screen.
- 10. In the Postal Code field, enter 20006.
- 11. Click Next.
- 12. Keep the Closer or Exact Distance radio button selected.
- 13. In the Distance From Postal Code field, Enter 50.
- 14. Click Next.
- 15. Click Finish.
- 16. Click OK and view the results.

NOTE: There is an example of a **Proximity Prompt** view built into the Baseline Users shortcuts. If a user clicks on this view (located under Customer/Member Searches shortcut Group), they will be able to enter the desired zip code into the prompt. However, this prompt is based on SQL written directly in the SQL tab of that prompted View and can only be edited by an advanced user. **Therefore the settings are static for that prompted view at 50 miles from the center of the zip**.

New Postal Codes CAN be added for international use.

## **Creating Prompted Views**

The most valuable type of everyday use View a user can create is a Multi-prompt view. Multi prompted views enable users to look up a record by multiple level's of criteria from one interface. In the exercises that follow, users will first create a single prompt finding Persons from a particular Company to understand basic prompt construction. Then users will create a complicated multi-prompt view for finding Persons record(s) based on multiple possibilities.

Users logged in with a profile of Aptify Baseline User have available to them multiple prompted views already created under the pre-existing shortcuts on the left-hand side of the screen. Many have multiple prompts attached to them. Most are created using "OR" statements in the filter logic so that the user may choose from only one selection. Users can easily integrate "OR" statements and even more complicated combinations of "ANDs", "ORs", or other SQL/boolean search characteristics.

### **Creating A Prompted View—Text Box**

- 1. From the top Navigation Bar, *right click* the **Persons** service and select **Create View**.
- 2. In the Name field, enter Prompt for Company Name.
- 3. Click Filters.
- 4. From the Field drop-down list, select Company.
- 5. From the **Operator** drop-down list, select **Begins With**.
- 6. Click the Show Advanced button.
- 7. Click the **Prompt Wizard** button.
- 8. Leave Text Box selected and click Next.

Prompt Wizard						
This wizard will help you to set up user prompting for the State Field in the $\ensuremath{Persons}$ Service.						
Step 1: Select Prompt Control Type						
Text Box - User manually enters a value						
💿 List Box User selects a value from a standard list box						
💿 Drop Down User selects a value from a drop down list						
Between User manually enters from and to values						
Cancel < Back Next > Finish						

- 9. Enter Company: as the Prompt Value
- 10. Enter **<Company>** as the Default Value

#### 11. Click Finish.

A	🗡 Create View								
5	Scheduling       Configuration       Grouping       Advanced (SQL)         General       Eilters       Fields ✓       Sorting       Format       Hierarchy       Paging ✓       Auto Refresh								
	FilterID	Service	Field	Operator	Value				
Þ	0 1	Persons	Company Name	Contains	<pre><prompt defau<="" pre=""></prompt></pre>				
	2	Persons							
	ilter Logic								
1	1								
l	Hide Advanced Reset FilterLogic Prompt Wizard 🛛 Optimize Sub-Queries								
	Load Template OK Cancel								

- 12. Click **OK** to return to the Aptify desktop. See prompt box.
- 13. In the **Prompt** box, enter **Danube** over the Default Value of <Company>.
- 14. Click **OK**.

🗡 Prompting	×
Company: <pre>Company&gt;</pre>	
ОК	Cancel

- 15. Observe the displayed records in the view created as a result.
- 16. Refresh the view to bring up the Prompt box again.
  - A view can be refreshed in four ways:
    - Click F5.
    - Click the **Refresh** button on the View Toolbar.
    - Right click within the view and select Refresh from the pop-up list.
    - Select a different view and then reselect the **Prompt for Company** view.
- 17. Enter Otto in the Prompt box and click OK.
- 18. Observe the displayed records.

#### **Creating A Multi-Prompted View**

- 1. Reopen the Prompt for Company Name view just created.
- 2. Click the Name field and delete the current Name.
- 3. Enter Persons Search in the Name field as the new Name.
- 4. Click Filters.
- 5. Select the second, blank filter line Field (first, existent line will be for CompanyName).
- 6. From the Field drop-down list, select Name/Company.
- 7. From the **Operator** drop-down list, select **Begins With**.
- 8. Leave the Value field Blank.
- 9. Click the Show Advanced button.
- 10. Click the **Prompt Wizard** button.
- 11. Leave Text Box selected and click Next.
- 12. Enter First Name, Last Name as the Prompt Value
- 13. Enter **<First, Last>** as the Default Value, then click **Finish**.
- 14. Click in the third, blank filter line Field.
- 15. From the Field drop-down list, select ID.
- 16. From the **Operator** drop-down list, select "=".
- 17. Leave the Value field Blank.
- 18. Click the Show Advanced button.
- 19. Click the Prompt Wizard button.
- 20. Leave Text Box selected and click Next.
- 21. Enter ID: as the Prompt Value
- 22. Enter **0** as the Default Value, then click **Finish**.
- 23. In the Filter Logic area, change each AND to an OR.
- 24. Click OK.
- 25. Attempt different values in each prompt to bring results.

#### NOTES:

- For text based prompts, always use **Begins With** as the Operator This will ensure a more expedited search. Using **Contains** will search through an entire table and is NOT recommended.
- Always use default value for a prompt of the field name contained in Less Than and Greater Than symbols for Text based fields. 0 in Numeric based fields. This will ensure those values are skipped and the filled out value is searched for.

#### **Creating A Prompted View: Drop-down List**

- 1. Click on **Companies Service**, then from the top Navigation Bar, *right click* the **Companies** service and select **Create View**.
- 2. In the Name field, enter List of States.
- 3. Click Filters.
- 4. From the Field drop-down list, select State.
- 5. From the **Operator** drop-down list, select **Exactly Matches**.
- 6. Click the Show Advanced button. Click the Prompt Wizard button.
- 7. Select drop-down and click Next.
- 8. Enter the values for the drop-down list in the fields provided.
  - Click in the white field, Enter **TX**, **NY**, and **DC**, each, one per line.

Prompt Wizard	
Step 2: Enter Listed Values The following values will be option	s for the user:
Values	
TX	
NY	
DC	
•	•
Cancel < Back	Next > Finish

- 9. Click Next to continue.
- 10. Enter **TX** as the default value.
- 11. Click Finish.
- 12. Click **OK**. Click **OK** when the Prompt box appears.
- 13. Observe the displayed records
- 14. Click the Refresh View icon.
- 15. When prompted, select NY from the drop-down list, click OK, view the records list.
- 16. Click on **Persons Service**, note the view names to the right, click on "List of states" and see the prompt.

The procedure for creating a List Box prompted view is identical to the procedure for creating the drop-down prompted view.

### **Using the Between Operator**

In Aptify, users can utilize the **Between** Operator to display results that exist between two dates or numbers. Between Operators can also be used in a Prompted deployment. This can be extremely helpful in creating views where date or numeric ranges for the results are variable.

#### Using the Between Operator on a set basis

Follow these steps to use the Between operator

- 1. From the top Navigation Bar, *right click* the Persons service and select Create View.
- 2. In the Name field, enter Member Join Date.
- 3. Select the **Filters** Tab.
- 4. In the Field column, enter Join Date.
- 5. In the Operator field, select Between.
- 6. In the Value field, click on the ellipsis (...).
- 7. In the Join Date From field, enter 1/1/2008.
- 8. In the **To** date field, enter **12/31/2008**.
- 9. Click **OK to** close the **Date Range** box.
- 10. Click **OK** to run the view.
- 11. Observe the results of the View showing members who joined during the date range.

J	Y View Properties - 'Member Join Date'								
	Scheduling       Configuration       Grouping       Advanced (SQL)         General       Eilters       ✓       Fields       ✓       Format       Hierarchy       Paging       Auto Refresh								
		Service	Field	Operator	Value				
	Persons		Join Date	Between	1/1/2008 AND 12/				
	F	Persons							
		Show Advanced	Goʻ Select a range Join Date Fr 1 To 1	e for Join Date /1/2008 2/31/2008 OK Cance					
		Save Template			OK Cancel				

#### Using the Between Operator with a Prompted View

Follow these steps to use the Between operator with a Prompted View:

- 1. From the top Navigation Bar, *right click* the **Persons** service and select **Create View**.
- 2. In the Name field, enter Member Join Date Prompt.
- 3. Select the Filters Tab.
- 4. In the Field column, select Member Type (make sure it is member type text).
- 5. In the **Operator** column, select **Contains**.
- 6. For the Value, create a Prompt text box as learned in previous exercises (Show Advanced Button),
- 7. On the second Filter line, in the Field column, enter Join Date.
- 8. As the **Operator**, select **Between**.
- 9. Leave the Value field blank.
- 10. Click the Prompt Wizard.
- 11. The **Between** Operator should default as checked.
- 12. Click Next.

A Sc <u>G</u> e	Create View hedulin <u>a</u> <u>C</u> o eneral <u>F</u> ilters	nfiguration <u>G</u> roupir Fiel <u>d</u> s 🖌 <u>S</u> orting	g <u>A</u> dvanced (SQL Fo <u>r</u> mat <u>H</u> ierarc	) hy	<u>P</u> aging √ Au	to <u>R</u> efresh		
	FilterID	Service	Field		Operator	Value		
	1	Persons	Member Type	Co	ntains	<prompt defau<="" td=""><td></td><td></td></prompt>		
	2	Persons	Join Date	Be	tween 👻			
	3	Persons						
Fil	lter Logic AND 2 Hide Advance oad Template	ed) Reset FilterLogi ۲۰۰۰	Prompt Wizard		This wizard in the Perso Step 1: Sel Text Bo List Box Drop D Between Cancel	will help you to set ins Service. ect Prompt Control T x User manually c User selects a va own User select: n User manually Ser manually	up en ilue a a	e user prompting for the Join Date Field e ters a value e from a standard list box value from a drop down list ters from and to values Next > Finish

13. In the Join Date From field, enter 1/1/2008.

14. In the To date field, enter 12/31/2008.

Prompt Wizard	×
Step 2: Default Value and Caption Enter a default value (optional):	
From 1/1/2008	To 12/21/2008
Enter a prompt caption (this will	appear on the prompt dialog):
From Join Date Between	To And
<u></u>	
Cancel < Back	Next > Finish

- 15. Click the Finish button to close the Prompt Wizard box.
- 16. Click the **OK** button to run the view.
- 17. Enter Student in the Member Type Contains field.
- 18. Leave the Date fields as the default 2008 dates. These can be edited in the future.

A Prompting				×
Member Type Contains	Student			
Join Date Between	1/1/2008	And	12/21/2008	
			ОК	Cancel

- 19. Click the **OK** button.
- 20. Observe the results of the View.

### **Utilizing Base Views**

Base Views are pre-created views that combine fields from multiple services into one, selectable view setting. By selecting an existing Base View in a New View, users have access to the data and fields from the services designated in that Base View.

In the example below, users will select from a View of Persons the **PersonsWithCommittees** Base View. Users will consequently see four Services represented in the **Fields** tab and in the subsequent results when the View is run:

- Persons
- Committees
- Committee Terms
- Member Records

Base Views give users unlimited cross reference possibilities across the entire system. Once users develop a competency in Views, they can request that certain Base Views be built by System Administrators and be populated under various services as a Base View value when creating a new View.

- 1. From the top Navigation Bar, *right click* on the **Persons** service and select **Create View**.
- 2. In the Name field, enter Base View for Committees & Persons.
- 3. From the Base View field drop-down, select PersonsWithCommittees.

A Create View	
Configuration Grouping Advanced (SQL) General Filters Fields Sorting Format Hierarchy Paging Auto Refresh Scheduling	
Name         Base View for Committees and Persons         Base View Description           View Type         List View         Person's Committees involvement.	
Base View Persons With Committees	
Description Base View for Committees and Persons	
~	
Load Template OK Cancel	

4. Click on the **Fields** tab.

5. Expand the View and observe the Selected Fields area.

Selected Fields:					
Field	Data Type	Display Name	H		
ID	Number	ID			
NameWCompany	Text	Name/Company			
AddressLine1	Text	Address Line 1			
City	Text	City			
State	Text	State			
ZipCode	Text	Zip Code			
Country	Text	Country			
PhoneAreaCode	Text	Phone Area Code			
Phone	Text	Phone			
PhoneExtension	Text	Phone Extension			
Email	Text	Email			
MemberType	Text	Member Type			
TermRank	Number	Term Rank			
TermTitle	Text	Term Title			
TermRole	Text	Term Role			
Region	Text	Region			
TermMemberStartDate	Date/Time	Term Member Start Date			
TermMemberEndDate	Date/Time	Term Member End Date			
Term	Text	Term			
CommitteeName	Text	Committee Name			
CommitteeType	Text	CommitteeType			
ParentCommittee	Text	Parent Committee			
CommitteeCoordinator	Text	Coordinator			
CommitteeReach	Text	Committee Reach			

- 6. There are four Services represented in the Fields:
  - NameWCompany Persons Service
  - TermTitle Committee Terms Service
  - TermRole Term Member Service
  - CommitteeName Committee Service
- 7. Select the Filters tab the same Fields are represented under the Filter Fields column.
- 8. Click the **OK** button
  - This will run the View without Filters users are normally encouraged to apply at least 1-2 Filters.
  - This View can be modified/edited like any other List View.

## **Copying & Editing Existing Views**

Once familiar with the Viewing systems, users can start to edit/create more complex Prompted Views. For this exercise, users will open an existing prompted view, copy that view, and then edit it.

- 1. Under the Customer/Member Searches group shortcuts, click to run the **Persons by** Location shortcut.
- 2. For the **Prompt**, select the **Cancel** button (note: the view is active).
- 3. On the Navigation Bar, *right click* the Persons by Location view.
- 4. Select Copy.
  - This View is Read Only because it was made a shortcut from a Shared Folder.
  - Users are copying the View in order to Edit.
  - Discussion of the use of **Shared Folders** is in **Ch. 5**.
- 5. On the Navigation Bar, click on Persons, then *right click* on Persons.
- 6. From the list, select Paste View.
- 7. The displayed Views' **Name** should now read: **Copy of Persons by Location**, Click **Cancel** on the displayed prompt.
- 8. Open the View **Properties** by:
  - Clicking the **Properties** button in the View button bar
  - or *right clicking* in the View and selecting View Properties
- 9. Select the Filters tab observe the previously created filters.

/ View Properties - 'Persons by Location'									
	Scheduling <u>Configuration</u> <u>G</u> rouping <u>A</u> dvanced (SQL) <u>G</u> eneral <u>Filters</u> Fiel <u>ds</u> <u>Sorting</u> <u>Format</u> <u>H</u> ierarchy <u>P</u> aging <u></u> Auto <u>R</u> efresh								
		Service	Field	Operator	Value				
	Þ	Persons	City	Contains	<prompt default="&lt;/td"></prompt>				
		Persons	County	Begins With	<prompt default="&lt;/td"></prompt>				
		Persons	State	Exactly Matches	<prompt default="&lt;/td"></prompt>				
		Persons	Address Line 1	Contains	<prompt default="&lt;/td"></prompt>				
		Persons	Zip Code	Exactly Matches	<prompt default="&lt;/td"></prompt>				
		Persons	Phone Area Code	Exactly Matches	<prompt default="&lt;/td"></prompt>				
L		Persons	Primary Email	Contains	<prompt default="&lt;/td"></prompt>				
		Persons							
Show Advanced									
	Sa	ave Template		01	Cancel				

- 10. Click in the Field section of the last open row. (to add an additional filter)
- 11. From the drop-down, select Country.
- 12. From the Operator drop-down, select Exactly Matches.
- 13. Leave the Value field Blank.
- 14. To create a new prompt, click on the Show Advanced button.
- 15. Select the Prompt Wizard button.
- 16. Ensure that **Text Box** is checked.
- 17. Click the Next button.
- 18. From the Enter a Prompt Caption field, delete the words Exactly Matches.
- 19. In the Prompt Caption field, enter a Colon after the word, Country.
- 20. In the **Default Value** field, enter **<Country>**.
  - By entering a default value between <> the user ensures that if that field is NOT used in the prompt, no value will be recognized.
  - Because this uses **OR** in the Advanced Filter string, there must be a default value placeholder of **<Country>**.

rompt Wizard				×
Step 2: Default Va Enter a default v	alue and Caption alue (optional):			
<country></country>				
Enter a prompt o	aption (this will ap	pear on the prom	npt dialog):	
Country:				
Cancel	< Back	Next >	Fin	ish

- 21. Click the Finish button.
- 22. Change the last Filter logic parameter from AND to **OR**.
- 23. Click the **OK** button.
- 24. In the Country: prompt, enter Ireland.
- 25. **Observe** the results.

# **Grouping Data in Views**

Users can group records in a list view by common characteristics, and display a summary of the grouped records, which makes it easier to interpret and analyze data. For example, a user can group similar Orders records together, and then display the total value of those orders.

- 1. Open the Copy of Persons By Location view, click on the Properties button.
- 2. Select the Grouping tab.
- 3. Click the Enable Grouping checkbox.
- 4. From the Field drop-down, select Company.
- 5. From the Summary Position drop-down, select BelowData.

A View Properties - '	Persons by Location'						
Format <u>H</u> ierarchy F Configuration <u>G</u> roup	Format       Hierarchy       Paging       Auto Refresh       Scheduling         Configuration       Grouping       Advanced (SQL)       General       Filters       Fields       Sorting						
Enable Grouping							
Field	Company 💌						
Caption							
Summary Position	BelowData						
Save Template	OK Cancel						

- 6. Select the **Fields** tab.
- 7. Expand the View Properties window.
- 8. Select the **ID** row by clicking once.
- 9. Use the bottom scroll bar, move to the right of **Selected Fields** section and find the **Aggregate Function** column.
- 10. Click the Aggregate Function cell in the ID row, then click the down arrow.

11. Select the **Count** value.

Sel	ect	ed	Fie	ds:

Field	Data '	Display Name	Hyperlink	Target Field	Show Decrypted	Aggregate Functi		
Company	Text	Company	<b>V</b>	Name				
City	Text	City						
ID	Numb	ID				Count		
FirstName	Text	FirstName						
LastName	Text	Last Name						
Title	Text	Title						
AddressLine1	Text	Address Line 1						
State	Text	State						

- 12. Click OK.
- 13. In the Country prompt field of the Prompt Select Box, enter Ireland. Click OK.
- 14. In the displayed View, observe:
  - ID column displays the Count of Persons for each company in the light blue line.

<ul> <li>Users can expand/collapse company groups using the + and - b</li> </ul>	uttons.
--	---------

Company	ID	City	First Name	L
	512	Dublin	Gaines	V
	854	Dublin	Victor	E
	1196	Dublin	Isaac	ŀ
<u>Aer Arann</u>	170	Dublin	Sarah	L
	2222	Dublin	Yakov	F
	1880	Dublin	Kaitlyn	L
	1538	Dublin	Wan	I
Company: Aer Arann	7	$\mathbf{D}$		
	1539	Dublin	Xia	E
	1881	Dublin	Mary	P
	2223	Dublin	Zahur	L
Aer Lingus Group Plc	171	Dublin	Tracey	F
	1197	Dublin	Kevin	J
	855	Dublin	Xander	J
	513	Dublin	Hannah	C
Company: AerLingus Group Plc	7	$\mathbf{>}$		

<u>Grouping</u> is extremely valuable for aggregating financial data such as Orders or Payments. Users can choose multiple fields to aggregate using different functions. The following will demonstrate some of those capabilities:

- 1. Under Orders Shortcut Group, click on Orders Balance Grouped by Company View.
- 2. In the **Bill To Company** prompt field, type **Hitachi**.
- 3. Click OK.
- 4. Observe the view is grouped by **Company** and aggregated for **Count** in the **ID** field and **SUM** in the **Balance** field.

Or	Orders Balance Grouped per Co.							
	BillToCompany	ID	Order Date	BillToName	Line1_ProductName	Balance		
		127	9/8/2009	Xanthe Ericson	Sampco Standards Volume III	\$117.00		
		434	10/2/2008	Edward Carter	4oz Sampco Glass	(\$10.00)		
	-	785	10/2/2008	Edward Carter	Sampco Golf Shirt	\$78.75		
		1136	10/2/2008	Edward Carter	Sampco Oxford Shirt	(\$10.00)		
		2051	1/30/2010	Dahlia Hill	End Table	\$712.50		
		2156	9/8/2009	Paige Robinson	Arm Chair	(\$10.00)		
		2324	9/8/2009	Dacey Robinson	The Sampco Way	(\$10.00)		
		2492	9/8/2009	Oliver Beck	Sampco Ski Cap	\$34.42		
	Hitachi Ltd	2660	9/8/2009	Edward Carter	Corporate Membership	(\$10.00)		
	<u>ritaciii, ctu.</u>	2828	9/8/2009	Querida Miller	Sampco Hooded Sweatshirt	(\$10.00)		
		3092	9/8/2009	Dahlia Hill	12oz Sampco Mug	\$32.40		
		7608	7/6/2009	Edward Carter	Samp co Standards Volume I	\$0.00		
		8103	7/6/2009	Edward Carter	Student Membership	\$42.50		
		8598	7/6/2009	Edward Carter	2008 Samp co Exhibition	\$960.00		
		9093	7/6/2009	Edward Carter	Executive Leather Chair	\$425.00		
		9947	7/22/2013	Querida Miller	Student Membership	\$100.00		
		9975	7/22/2013	Paige Robinson	Student Membership	\$100.00		
		10007	7/22/2013	Paige Robinson	Sampco 2013 New Student Conference	\$0.00		
	BillToCompa	18	)			2542.57		

### **Preview Pane**

The **Preview Pane** is an optional display area at the bottom of a view, which allows users to access a record's data without having to open the actual record. Preview Panes are configured by Administrators, but are turned on and off by end users from a View. They can be enabled for any View in Aptify, and can display any data that is contained in the view's records.

Note that <u>Preview Panes do NOT have to display the data currently shown in the View</u>. This allows users to see information contained on any tab inside a record. Users may also edit the data in the preview pane.

In the Persons View below, the Preview Pane button is activated, and a record is selected in the View. The Preview Pane shows Membership information from the record's Membership tab. The View itself displays basic Name, Company, Address, and Title information.

B	2		🚺 In Place	Edit 🛛 🔚 🚹 Reports 🛛 🏦 🖓 Add To List	🖹 ይ 💲	Preview 🛕 🤹
Al	l (P	age 1 of	10)			
	ID 🔺	First Name	Last Name	Company		Title
	1	Aiesha	Baldwin	Danube Partners	N	larketing Senior Director
	2	Alexandra	Wade	U. Hardwick Physics AB	N	larketing Senior VP
	3	Athena	Scott	Akebono Cryogenics Incorporated	N	larketing VP
	4	Baka	Lambert	Ottoman	P	resident
	5	Dacey	Yukon	Polyhedron Power Devices	R	esearch Associate
	6	Emily	Robinson	VC Osaka Technologies Group, Inc.	R	esearch Associate VP
	7	Gabriela	Estevez	O Fiber Electric Inc	R	esearch Director
	8	Habika	Harris	X.E. Awaken Components Limited	R	esearch Executive VP
	9	Hannah	Taylor	Gemstone Solutions Group	R	esearch Manager
	10	Jessica	Pintaro	Folk och fä HB	R	esearch Senior Director
	11	Madison	Harris	Frankenversand	R	esearch Senior VP
	12	Mary	Warner	France restauration	R	esearch VP
	13	Nadia	Miller	Franchi S.p.A.	S	ales Associate
-		<b>N</b> ·		ETE B. ET TW	-	
		Member <sup>-</sup> Co. Member <sup>-</sup>	Type Non-N Type Corpo	1ember 💌		
		<u>Organiz</u>	ation Samp	to Holdings, Inc.	Dues Informat	ion 🗸
		St	tatus Active		Last Dues A	mount \$2,850.00
		Functional	Title	•	Last Pa	y Date 4/7/2010 9:28:3
		Contact	Rank		Dues Pai	d Thru 4/6/2012 9:28:4
		Directory I	Rank 0		Joi	n Date 4/7/2010 9:28:3
E	xclude	From			Terminatio	n Date
	Mai		Fax	E Email Directory	reminatio	
		Mail (	Code	State Senate		
		Carrier R	oute	State House		
		USCong	ress	County District		

#### **Selecting the Preview Pane**

Users also have the option on a View to select any form template as a Preview Pane under the Configuration tab. This enables users to create multiple Views with differing Preview Panes. If a Preview Pane is NOT selected, the default Preview Pane will be displayed. To select a Preview Pane:

- 1. Open the San Francisco Student Members View created earlier.
- 2. Click the Properties button, then click the Configuration button.
- 3. In the Preview Template lookup field, enter Persons. Select the Tab button.
- 4. From the Lookup List that displays, scroll to click Persons.Orders, then click Select.
  - (The one with **Persons Orders Tab Sub-Template** in the **Description** field)

Y View Properties - 'San Francisco Student Members'					
General Filters V Fields V Sorting Format Hierarchy Paging V Auto Refresh Scheduling					
Configuration Arouping Advanced (SQL)					
Form Template	$\mathbb{A}$				
Record Template	$\mathbb{A}$ $\times$				
Preview Template Persons.Orders	A ×				
Show Preview Pane					
🕼 Read Uncommitted					

- 5. From the View Properties pane, click **OK**.
- 6. From the View's button bar, click the Preview Pane button.
- 7. Select one of the records in the View by clicking a name field of a person record.
- 8. Observe the **Orders** information that displays in the bottom half of the View.

B	<b>2</b>	<u> -                                   </u>	In Place E	dit   🔚 📊 Reports 🛗	🗄 Add To	List 🖭 🔅	2	S Preview
Sa	San Francisco Student Members							
	ID	First Name	Last Name	Company		Title		Address Line 1
	49	Mainwight	2 selve on	Let's Stop N Shop	Advertising	Associate		87 Polk St. Suite 5
	90	Quillan	Byrd	Contonwood Taping Systems	CustomerSu	pport Senio	rVP	8991 Monet Street
	390	John	Jackson	Let's Stop N Shop	Director, Fina	ance		87 Polk St. Suite 5
	1339	Andrew	Walker	Bechtel Group, Inc.	Sales Execut	ive VP		50 Beale St.
	1458	Reginald	Robinson	Cottonwood Taping Systems	Manager, Co	nsulting Ser	vices	8991 Monet Street
	1758	Mason	Lowe	Let's Stop N Shop	Manager, Re	search		87 Polk St. Suite 5
	2100	Brian	Jones	Let's Stop N Shop	VP, Engineer	ing		87 Polk St. Suite 5
	12		To Place F	dit 🛛 🚛 🛯 🗽 📊 Reports	👬 🕂 A	dd To List	<b>B</b>	😤   🔩   🔢 Prev
0	der	s for Qui	illan Byı	rd	_	_		
	ID	Order Date	L	_ine1_ProductName	Grand Total	Balance		
	42	10/22/2007	Sampco Ba	seball Hat	\$17.95	\$0.00	Shipp	bed
	165	2/23/2010	2007 Samp	co Exhibition	\$1,125.00	\$10.00	Shipp	ped
	3019	1/9/2010	Sampco Fu	rniture Standards Volume III	\$99.00	\$0.00	Shipp	bed
	4433	10/12/2007	16oz Samp	co Glass	\$40.80	\$40.80	Shipp	oed

9. Click Refresh button to return to previous view.

# **Composing a Bulk Message**

In this exercise, a user will draft a sample bulk message that could be sent to the Persons who appear in a filtered view. Note that this exercise will draft the message but not actually send it.

- 1. Open the San Francisco Student Members view created earlier.
- 2. In the View toolbar, click the **Messaging** button.



- The Aptify Messaging window appears.
- 3. In the Subject field, enter Your Orders Last 30 Days.
- 4. Select the **Plain Text Message** tab.
  - A user can compose messages in either HTML or Plain Text format. For this exercise, use the Plain Text format.
- 5. Click in the text field and type **Dear [space]**.
- 6. Click the **Insert Field** button.
- 7. Expand the Name folder and select FirstLast.

Select Field	
🗄 📲 Government	
🗄 🔁 Membership	
🗐 👘 🔂 Name	
NameWCompany	
FirstName	
MiddleName	
LastName	Ξ
Suffix	
FirstLast	
🗄 📲 Other	Ŧ
4 III +	
Select Field Hide	

- 8. The message field should now read: "Dear <<FirstLast>>". Enter a colon after "<<FirstLast>>" and click the **Enter** key twice.
- 9. To move the cursor to the line below, click the **Enter** button.
- 10. Click the Insert Part button.
- 11. Locate the Accounting folder.
- 12. Expand the Order Information folder.
- 13. Select the Order History Part.

- 14. Select the **Options** tab.
- 15. Select the Addressing sub-tab.
- 16. In the From Name field, enter your name.
- 17. In the From Email and Reply To fields, enter your email address.

tify Messaging 📃 💷 💌
t Your Orders - Last 30 Days
Message Plain Text Message Attachment Options Preview Actions
essing belivery
To Type: Field 🔹
To: Email1
From Name: Adam Smith
From Email: Adam.Smith@Aptify.com
Reply To: Adam.Smith@Aptify.com
CC Type: None
cc:
BCC Type: None 👻
BCC:
Ty Messaging

18. Select the **Preview** tab and select the **Text** sub-tab.

Aptify Messaging
File
⊕!↓
Subject: Your Orders - Last 30 Days
HTML Message Plain Text Message Attachments Options Preview Ictions
To: Jackson_John@demodata.aptify.com
CC:
BCC:
Subject Your Orders - Last 30 Days
HTML Text
Dear John Jackson:
E
ID Order Date Product Name Grand Total
8352 2/20/2010 9:28:15 PM Round Conference Table 2700.0000
8847 2/20/2010 9:28:16 PM Executive Succession Planning 260.0000 1755 3/28/2010 9:32:31 PM Demo Calendar Year Subscription 510.0000

- 19. Use the arrow buttons to preview the personalized messages addressed to the people in your **San Francisco Student Members** view.
  - Note: the <<*FirstLast*>> field is replaced with Person's First and Last Name.
  - Note: each Person's email address appears in the To: field for each message.

### **Attaching Reports**

Users can also attach Crystal Reports to a Bulk Message. This enables users to create a View for an audience that they wish to send a particular report to, and then attach a specific report, such as Invoice, Name Tent, Badge, Activity Consolidation, etc. Users would check the particular Report from the Attachments tab and send the message. The system will then send the appropriate Report to the individual user with only their relevant data.

Note: It is necessary to be upgraded through Service Pack 5.5.1 for this function.

- 1. Click the Attachments tab of the Bulk Message.
- 2. Click the scroll bar to the right of the Report to Attach section.
- 3. Scroll and then select the Aptify Badge report.

🖂 Aptify Messagi	ng 🔭 👘 👘 👘 👘 👘 👘 👘 👘 👘
File	
🖅 ! 🖡	
Subject: Your Ore	ders - Last 90 Dava
HTML Message Pl	ain Text Message Attachments Options Preview Actions
Add	File Name Path
Remove	
Remove All	
Report To Attach	Reports
	Avery 5161 With Mail Code
	Persons By Zip Code
	Persons By Member Type
	Avery 5395 Badge Label
	Person by State
	V Aptify Badge 👻
Export Format	

**Note:** Only certain reports will be available from Views of particular services. For example, Invoice Reports are only available when a View of Orders is created.

4. Click the **X** button in the upper right corner of the window to close the Aptify Messaging dialog without sending the message.

Do NOT click the Send Messages button.

# **Topic Codes**

Topic Codes provide a sophisticated way to collect **information about the areas of interest of customers/members**. Topic codes can be used effectively for **customer/member profiling** as well as driving personalized content to a particular user's Web site (if the organization is using the optional Aptify E-Business Suite). Topic codes can also be a great resource for target marketing or determining the viability of a new product or service offering.

Although topic codes are most commonly associated with people, companies, products, or news articles, their flexibility allows them to link to any type of record in Aptify. Because topic codes can be associated with any service, records in new custom modules can also link to topic codes, providing virtually unlimited possibilities.

The default Aptify installation provides a **Topic Codes tab** on the following forms: **Organizations, Companies, Employees, Persons, and Products**. Multiple records, such as Persons and Products, linked to a particular Topic Code provides a powerful and flexible relationship which is useful when targeting marketing campaigns.

🔹 New Topic Codes Record				
🛃 😼 🖳 🌧 👗 🖆 💷 🥘 📎 🚥 🧦 🎭 🎨 🎲 🖛 🔗 🛞 🜉				
General Topic Cod	de Entities Topic Code Possible Values Attachments			
Name	1			
Description				
	20 2			
Parent	<del>m</del> ×			
Status	Active			
Туре	Code			
Value Type	Yes/No			
Default Value	Yes			
Start Date	5/24/2012			
End Date				
Web Enabled	Global			
-				

Note that Topic Codes are also referred to as "Personal Interest Codes."

The Topic Code service is located under the **Administration** – **CRM** application, but Views of Topic Codes can be created from any of the major services.

In the default Aptify installation, all users have the ability to add or edit Topic Code records. In practice, Topic Codes are typically configured by administrators or advanced users so this form will not be reviewed in great detail in this end user manual.

🍪 Committees 🚺 🐑 Analysis 🛛 Awards 📜 Pictures 🔛 Comments 🗍 Attachments 🗍 🖓 Contact 🖉 Details 🚧 Membership 🛛 🎆 Functions 🛛 🐲 Contact Log 🔲 Orders 🔍 Subscriptions 🛛 🎆 Meetings 📄
Person Tax Exempt Codes   General   Personal 🙀 Companies   🖷 Relationships   🏢 Lists 🖼 Topic Codes   Saved Payment Methods
Browse By Category All Selected Topics
Business
Languages
Law
Medical
Science
Sports
Check All Un-Check All

This illustrates how **Topic Codes** appear on a record form.

After a user has added Topic Codes to a particular service, the available codes appear under the Topic Codes tab.

In the example above from the Employees form, there are Top-Level Topic Code categories. Each of these categories can have one or more sub-topics that a user can access by clicking a category's hyperlink.

Aptify creates a Topic Code link between the record and the code (or codes) that a user checked when the record is saved.

The Browse by Category sub-tab displays topic codes by category. After selecting one or more topic codes, save the record. Then a user can click the **All Selected Topics** tab to see a list of the codes they selected (regardless of category).

Note that selecting a Top Level topic code within the Browse by Category sub-tab does not automatically enable all of that category's sub-topics. Users need to place a check mark next to each Topic Code individually.

From either sub-tab, a user can click the **Check All** button at any time to select all of the codes on that particular screen (it does not enable all topic codes, just the ones that are currently visible). Likewise, a user can de-select all of the visible codes by clicking the **Un-Check All** button.

When a user wants to analyze records based on Topic Code selection, they can create a filtered view of the Topic Code Links service in of the major services (Persons, Companies, etc.)

## **Creating View Templates**

Templates can be created for Views as well as records. View Templates enable users to load a pre-formatted View's settings into a new View. View properties such as Filters, Sorting, Formatting, and Scheduling are automatically copied from the desired Template into the new View. This saves time and prevents mistakes from being made when creating the view.

#### **Creating a View Template**

- 1. Open the **View Properties** of the view desired to use as a Template.
- 2. In the lower left corner, click the Save Template button.

A View Properti	es - 'Person Lookup'	
Configuration General Filters	rouping Advanced (SQL) ✔ Fields ✔ Sorting Format Hierarchy Pagir	ng 🗸 Auto <u>R</u> efresh Schedulin <u>a</u>
Name	Person Lookup	Base View Description
View Type	ListView	
Base View	Persons 💌	
Description	This is a prompted view example for a lookup of perso	ons by various search criteria. 🔺
		<b>T</b>
Save Template.		OK Cancel

3. Enter the Name of the Template.

A K Save Ten	nplate X
Name	Persons Lookup Baseline
Description	
Category	General
	OK Cancel

4. At the far right of the **Category** field, click the **New** button.

New Template Category	
Enter the new category name	OK Cancel
Baseline Views	

- 5. Enter a New Category Name.
  - Defining a Category name creates a folder into which users can organize views.
- 6. Click **OK** to save the Category.
- 7. Click **OK** to save the Template.

### Loading a View Template

- 1. Create a View from the desired service.
- 2. In the lower left corner of the View Properties window, click the Load Template button.

A Create View		x
Configuration (	Grouping Advanced (SQL)	
<u>G</u> eneral <u>F</u> ilters	Fiel <u>d</u> s 🖌 Sorting Format Hierarchy Paging 🗸 Auto Refresh Scheduling	
Name	Base View Description	
View Type	List View	
Base View	Persons	
Description		*
		*
Load Template	Can	cel

3. Click the desired Category, which appear as tabs.

A Select A Record Template	
Genera Baseline Views	
Persons Lo	
	OK Cancel

- 4. Double-click the desired View template to load it.
- 5. **Observe** that the view's settings have been imported into the new View.

A Create View				
Configuration       Grouping       Advanced (SQL)         General       Filters ✓       Fields ✓       Sorting       Format       Hierarchy       Paging ✓       Auto Refresh       Scheduling				
Name	Person Lookup Base View Description			
View Type	ListView			
Base View	Persons			
Description	This is a prompted view example for a lookup of persons by various search criteria.			
	-			
Load Template	Load Template OK Cancel			

# **Creating a Chart View**

Aptify can visually represent data in a chart format, making it easier for users to interpret the information. Follow the steps below to create a Chart View:

- 1. *Right click* the **Persons** service and select **Create View**.
- 2. Name the view Individual Membership in CA by City.
- 3. From the View Type drop-down list, select Chart.

/ Create View	- • •
General Chart Filters Auto Refresh Scheduling Configuration	
Name Membership in CA by City	
View Type Chart	
Description Membership in CA by City	*
	-
Load Template OK	Cancel

4. Click the new Chart tab and select the Pie Chart 3D type.



- 5. Under the Charts tab, click the Grouping sub-tab.
- 6. From the Group By drop-down list, select City.

/ Create View					
General Chart Filters Auto Refront Scheduling Configuration					
Chart Type Grouping Summary Bioplay Color Title Data Options Axis Scaling					
Primary Grouping					
Croop by City					
Function					
Display As					
Customize Grouping Method					
Grouping SQL City					
Load Template OK Cancel					

7. Click the **Display** sub-tab and select **Show Legend**.

A Create View				
General Chart Filters Aut	General Chart Filters Auto Refresh Scheduling Configuration			
Chart Type Grouping Sun	Chart Type Grouping Summary Display Color Title Data Options Axis Scaling			
Chart Legend Show Legend Right				
X Axis	Y Axis	Z Axis		
J Show Axis	J Show Axis	✓ Show Axis		
😺 Show Major Gridline	V Show Major Gridline	✓ Show Major Gridline		
Show Minor Gridline	Show Minor Gridline	Show Minor Gridline		
Drill Down View				
Load Template OK Cancel				

8. Click the Title sub-tab and in the Top field, enter Membership % in CA by City.

A Create View	
<u>G</u> eneral C <u>h</u> ar	t <u>F</u> ilters Auto <u>R</u> efresh Scheduling <u>C</u> onfiguration
Chart Type	Grouping Summary Display Color Title Data Options Axis Scaling
Chart Title(s	
Тор	Membership % in CA by City
Left	
Bottom	
Right	
Load Templat	e OK Cancel

9. Click the Filters tab and set up filters to match those in the following figure.

/ Create View					
1	General Chart Eilters Auto Refresh Scheduling Configuration				
		Service	Field	Operator	Value
		Persons	State	Exactly Matches	CA
	0	Persons	Member Type	Exactly Matches	Individual Member 👻
		Persons			
lľ					
	S	how Advanced			
1	_				
	Lo	ad Template			OK Cancel

- 10. Click **OK** to see the displayed 3D Pie chart:
- 11. Then close the view.



# **Creating a Calendar View**

Calendar views display records representing events or transactions in a calendar according to the date and time at which they occur. Calendar views are very flexible; users can organize them by either day, week, month, or year. If a user sets the view in day or work week mode, they can select one of several time intervals ranging between one minute to one hour.

- 1. Click the Meetings service on the left.
- 2. From the top Navigation tool bar, *right click* the **Meetings** service and select **Create View.**
- 3. Name the View Upcoming Meetings
- 4. From the View Type drop-down, select Calendar.

/ Create View
Scheduling       Configuration       Grouping       Advanced (SQL)         General       Filters       Fields ✓       Sorting       Format       Hierarchy       Paging ✓       Auto Refresh
Name XYZ Contact Log
View Type List View
Description XYZ Contact Log
Load Template OK Cancel

- 5. Click the new **Calendar** Tab.
- 6. From the Mode drop-down, select Month View.
- 7. From the First Visible Date drop-down, select Manual.
- 8. From the Date drop-down, select the 1/1/2008.

X View Properties - 'XYZ Contact Log'	- • •
General Calendar Filters 🗸 Auto Refresh Scheduling Configuration	
General Data Grouping Display	
Mode Month View	
First Visible Date Manual	
Date Tuesday , January 01, 2008	
Save Template OK	Cancel

- 9. Click the **Data** sub-tab.
- 10. From the Start Date Field drop-down, select Start Date.
- 11. From the Duration Mode drop-down, select Standard Duration.
- 12. From the Title Field drop-down, select ID.

A View Properties - 'XYZ Contact Log'	- • ×
<u>G</u> eneral Calendar <u>F</u> ilters <del>V</del> Auto <u>R</u> efresh Scheduling <u>C</u> onfiguration	
General Data Grouping Display	
Start Date Field Date 🗸	
Duration Mode Standard Duration	
Std. Duration (Hours) 1	
Title Field ID 🔻	
Save Template OK	Cancel

- 13. Click the **Filters** tab.
- 14. Keep Meetings as the Service.

- 15. For the Field, select Date.
- 16. For the **Operator**, select the **> symbol**.
- 17. For the Value, select 1/1/2008.

A	🗡 Create View					
	General Calendar Eilters Auto Refresh Scheduling Configuration					
	Service	Field	Operator	Value		
	Meetings	Start Date	>	1/10-/2008		
	Meetings					
	Show Advanced					
	Load Template			ОК		

18. Click **OK** to display the View.


### **Pivot Tables**

Pivot Tables are interactive tables used to summarize data. Users Rotate (or *pivot*) rows and columns to view different summaries of data. A Separate Pivot Table tab appears in View and users employ the Properties dialog to specify settings.

Users can also move rows and columns to change the organization of the data cells. This is known as "pivoting."

		Order Date 🔻	
		⊞ 12/4/2003	⊞ 12/10/2003
BillToCompany	<ul> <li>Order Lines ProductID •</li> </ul>	Sum of GrandTotal	Sum of GrandTotal
Danube Partners	田 5		60.03
	⊞ 9	25	
	⊞ 10	75	
	Total	100	60.03
E Gemstone Solutions Gr	oup		
E Lotus Risk Services Lim	iited		
🗷 Osaka Crystal Technolo	gies, Inc.		
Ottoman			25
E Toadstool Interface Tech	anology Inc 123	100	
X.N. Chemical Systems	Co., Inc.	550	
Grand Total		750	85.03
		Order Date -	an a
•	• •	⊞ 12/4/2003	12/10/2003
Order Lines ProductID -	BillToCompany •	Sum of GrandTotal	Sum of GrandTotal
■ 5			60.03
<b>E</b> 8		100	
<b>9</b>	Danube Partners	25	
	ш Gemstone Solutions Group		
	E Lotus Risk Services Limited		
	Osaka Crystal Technologies, Inc.		
	€_Ottoman		25
	Si coadstool Interface Technology Inc 123	25	
	Inc.     Inc.     Inc.	75	
	1 Total	125	25

The two screen shots above illustrate how the organization of data changes when users move (or pivot) row headings.

In the top image, Order totals (in white) are organized based on the **BillToCompany** name (at the far left). By expanding a company heading (as in the case of Danube Partners), a user can further break down the Order totals based on specific products ordered by the company (Products are identified by their Product ID number in this example). Danube Partners ordered \$100 worth of products on 12/4/2003, of which \$25 was for Product 9.

The bottom image shows the same data except the BillToCompany heading has been moved to the right of the Order Line ProductID heading. Now instead of showing Order Totals based on Company, the table displays Order Totals based on the **Products Ordered**. Rearranging the two headings changed the format of the data and provides new insight into the data. With the new layout, a user can now determine that \$125 worth of Product 9 was sold on 12/4/ 2003, of which \$25 worth was purchased by Danube Partners.

NOTE: Many Pivot Tables can be replaced by Base Views. Base Views are often more effective than Pivot Tables as they use considerably less processing power, are more easily displayed in dashboards, and provide more data management options.

### **Managing and Sharing Views**

### **Managing Views**

All pre-created Folders, Views, and Shortcuts in BASE (out of the box/Training/ Sandbox) Aptify are tied to the Baseline Admin profile. That metadata is then tied to the Baseline profile via Shared Folders. When Administrators are initially setting up End Users in Aptify, they should <u>ALWAYS</u> copy the Baseline profile in step 6 of the User Administration Wizard. By copying the Baseline Profile that user will automatically receive the preloaded Views, Shortcuts, Shared Folders, and developed Dashboards.

The Baseline Admin profile and the Baseline profile are **NOT** the same; the Baseline Admin profile is used to house all metadata (Folders, Views, Shortcuts, etc.) - it is the profile from which ALL metadata should be distributed. The Baseline profile is the most complete END USER profile that is LINKED to all the metadata owned by the Baseline Admin user. By linking the data from the Baseline Admin to the Baseline profile, the metadata is not replicated and can be governed for ALL users that copy the Baseline profile by editing it from the Baseline Admin.

**Views that display for the Baseline User are non-editable** since they are linked back to the Baseline Admin's Shared Folders. This includes all views that initially linked to Shortcuts in the left hand side of the screen. When users become more comfortable with the Viewing system they can then copy those views, edit them, and create new views.

In addition, **ANY changes** made by the Baseline Admin to the views located in Shared Folders, **will be inherited** by any users connected to that Shared Folder.

If an administrator wants to transfer control of the Baseline Admin's Folders or Views to another user, possibly a Manager of a particular department, the Administrator could run the **Entity Bulk Operation Wizard** from a view of the Baseline Admin's Folders or Views.

Once Aptify is installed and a Client goes live, there are two major methods of distributing Views to End Users:

#### Creating/Sharing Views via the Views Service:

- 1. Administrator creates a View under Framework, Views service.
- 2. Administrator assigns the View to a manager or possibly to a specific end user.
- 3. The manager (or end user) can then share the views with other users, via Shared Folders.

#### **Creating/Sharing Views via Shared Folders:**

- 1. A manager (or end user) creates a View in their local instance of Aptify.
- 2. A manager (or end user) places a View in a Shared Folder.
- 3. The manager (or end user) informs their team that they can connect to the Shared Folder.

**Important** - Aptify recommends that most new and critical (not pre-loaded) end user Views be created by an administrator or manager and then placed on a dashboard, or shared. This helps reinforce standard business processes, ensures Views accuracy, and allows managers to quickly update the Views for all end users. End users should be encouraged to create their own views by copying those existing views and editing them to ensure a baseline of accuracy.

### **Connecting to Shared Folders and Views**

Follow these steps to connect to a shared view:

1. From the Navigation Bar, *right click* the **Persons** service and select **Connect to Shared Folder** from the list.



2. Expand the desired user (in this case, the SA user), then select the shared folder.

🗡 Connect to Shared Folder 🛛 💽										
Name	Shared Views									
Description	Shared Views									
All Us	ers a Shared Views									

- 3. Click **OK** to add the Shared Folder to the Folder List.
- 4. Expand the Shared Folder to see the list of shared view folders.

Folder List 4	ļ
A Home	
Recounting	
🥦 Customers	
💊 Account Manager Functions	
💦 Companies	
🐲 Contact Log	
🙀 Functions	
🌮 Member Status Types	
🚧 Member Types	
🌮 Person Relationship Types	
就 Persons	
and All	
Shared Views	
List Views	
Chart Views	
Pivot Tables	

- 5. Expand a shared view folder to see all the views that are currently being shared.
- 6. Disconnect from the shared folder.
  - *Right click* the shared folder and from the list, select **Delete**. Click **OK**.

#### **Creating a Shared Folder**

- 1. Right click the Persons service and select Create Folder.
- 2. In the Name field, enter My Shared Views.
- 3. In the Share this Folder box, place a check mark.
  - A user can also create folders for their own use (for example, if a user wants to organize their views into categories). In this case, they should not check the **Share this Folder** box and the views in this folder will not be available to other users.

🕂 Create Fo	lder 💌
Name	My Shared Views
Description	Views I want to share.
	Share this Folder
	OK Cancel

- 4. Click OK.
- 5. From the folders list, move the **Basic View** to the Shared folder. Note that this feature only works with the Folder List. Views cannot be dropped from the Navigation Bar
  - Click the **Basic view**.
  - While holding down the left mouse button, drag the view into the shared folder.
  - Release the left mouse button to move the view into the folder.

Folder List
A Home
Accounting
💐 Customers
🔷 Account Manager Functions
🚹 Companies
🐉 Contact Log
🙀 Functions
🏈 Member Status Types
🚧 Member Types
🌮 Person Relationship Types
nt Persons
📆 All
💫 Shared Views
🚞 List Views
🚞 Chart Views
📄 Pivot Tables
📆 Formatted View
🚟 Persons in CA
📆 Prompt for Company
💫 My Shared Views
Basic View

6. Other users can now connect to the shared folder and open the view that have been shared.

Any changes made by the owner of the folder will be inherited by the end user that connects to a shared folder.

# Chapter



# Reports

Objective	5.1
Exporting a View to Microsoft Excel	5.2
How Reporting Works	5.7
Running a Standard Export Report	5.8
Running a Crystal Report	5.11

## Objective

In this section, users will understand some of the Aptify reporting features and how views are used to report and communicate data, including how Aptify integrates with Microsoft Excel, how to run a Report, and how Aptify integrates with Business Objects Crystal Reports.

After completing this section, users will know the process for:

- Exporting a view to Microsoft Excel
- Working with Lists
- How to run Reports

### **Exporting a View to Microsoft Excel**

The following directions explain how to export a specific Views' results (Companies) to Microsoft Excel using the Excel Integration Wizard.

- 1. Create a new list view from the Companies service, specify the following characteristics:
  - Use a filter to display only Companies in Oregon.
  - Edit the Fields to display only the Name, City, State, and ZipCode.
  - When finished, the view should display the sample companies in Oregon. Try to create this view on your own. If you need assistance, follow these steps:
    - Select the Companies service and select Create View.
    - Assign a name for the view (like "Companies in OR").
    - Click Filters.
    - From the Field drop-down list, select State; from the Operator drop-down list, select Exactly Matches; in the Value field, enter OR.
    - Click Fields.
    - Move fields between the two display columns so that only Name, City, State, and ZIPCode appear in the Selected Fields column.
    - Click OK.
- 2. From the view button bar, click the **Export to Excel button** to launch the Excel Integration Wizard.
  - A user should not have any records selected when they click this icon (otherwise, only the selected record(s) will be exported rather than all records in the view). If a user has selected a record, *right click* within the view and select Clear Record Selection from the pop-up list before clicking the Microsoft Excel Export icon.

B	6	🛃 🗙 🖾 In Place Edit 🛛 🔙 📊 Reports	l To Lis	is 👰 🗄 💲 🔝 Preview 🛛 😰 👜 🦓							
Co	mpa	anies in Oregon	ľ	htegrat	e View	v with N	1icrosoft Excel				
	ID	Name	State	p Cod	lountr	Area	in Phc	Main Email	Web Site		
	18	Prince Crystal Technologies, Inc.	5776	Portla	OR	97201	United	503	869-3	main@princryteci	http://www.princrytecinc.com
	27	Great Lakes Food Market	2732	Euger	OR	97403	United	State	s		
	35	Hungry Coyote Import Store	City C	Elgin	OR	97827	United	United States			
	40	ULWC Micropolish Division	939 S	Portla	OR	97201	United	503	306-3	main@ulwcmicdiv	http://www.ulwcmicdiv.com
	55	Lonesome Pine Restaurant	89 Ch	Portla	OR	97219	19 United States				
	89	PPLM Oarsmen Discount Software Company	1255	Portla	OR	97201	United	503	979-1	main@pplmoardis	http://www.pplmoardissofcon
	153	The Big Cheese	89 Jel	Portla	OR	97201	United	State	s		

- 3. From the **Type** options, select **Copy Data**.
- 4. From the Mode options, select View in Excel.

5. From the Column Header Display Options, select Use Database Field Names.

🖳 Excel Integration Wizard	
Select from the options below to open this View in Type © Copy Data (This option makes a copy of the be refreshed.) © Link to Data (This option will allow you to ref	Microsoft Excel, or save it to a file. data in Excel, but is not linked and can not resh the data from Excel at any time.)
Mode View in Excel (without saving the file) Save to file Save to File + View in Excel	Column Header Display Options C Use Display Names C Use Database Field Names
Options File Name Worksheet Name	
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel

- 6. Click OK.
  - A Microsoft Excel window appears; the window contains the information from the view.
  - After exporting the view data to Microsoft Excel, a user can format the spreadsheet and resize the columns as necessary.

M	licrosoft Exe	cel - Book1			
:2	<u>F</u> ile <u>E</u> dit	View Insert Format Tools Data Window	Help		_ 8 ×
1	🛱 🗄 Arial	• 10 • <b>B</b> <i>I</i> <u>U</u> ≡ ≡		- 🗠	• <u>A</u> • 📮
1	1112	🛿 🥗 🦢   🖾 🏷   🏖 🎭 🕼   🖤 Reply with 🤇	hanges E <u>n</u>	d Review	÷
	A1	✓ f <sub>×</sub> ID			
	A	В	C	D	E 🖌
1	ID .	Name	City	State	ZipCode 💳
2	18	Prince Crystal Technologies, Inc.	Portland	OR	97201
3	27	Great Lakes Food Market	Eugene	OR	97403
4	35	Hungry Coyote Import Store	Elgin	OR	97827 📃
5	40	ULWC Micropolish Division	Portland	OR	97201
6	55	Lonesome Pine Restaurant	Portland	OR	97219
7	89	PPLM Oarsmen Discount Software Company	Portland	OR	97201
8	153	The Big Cheese	Portland	OR	97201 🔍
4	→ → \\She	et1 / Sheet2 / Sheet3 /			
Read	ły				

- 7. Close Microsoft Excel without saving the file.
- 8. From the Companies in OR view, click the Microsoft Excel Export icon again.
- 9. Select Link to Data from the Type options.

- 10. Select Save to File + View in Excel from the Mode options.
- 11. Select Use Display Names from the Column Header Display Options.
  - Users will not notice a difference between these two options since the Field Name and the Display Name are identical for these company fields.
    - Note that the Display Name refers to a parameter in the field's definition and not to a Display Name a user modifies in a view's properties screen. Therefore, an administrator would need to edit the Display Names to have an effect on the exported data.

#### 12. Enter CLASSEXCEL.XLS in the File Name field.

- A user can also browse for a location to store the file by clicking the **ellipsis (...)** button.
- Microsoft Excel files use the .XLS extension.

#### 13. In the Worksheet Name field, enter Companies in OR.

🔜 Excel Integration Wizard												
Select from the options below to open this View in	Microsoft Excel, or save it to a file.											
C Copy Data (This option makes a copy of the data in Excel, but is not linked and can not be refreshed.)												
• Link to Data (This option will allow you to refr	esh the data from Excel at any time.)											
Mode	Column Header Display Options											
O View in Excel (without saving the file)	Use Display Names											
Save to file	O Use Database Field Names											
Save to File + View in Excel												
Options												
File Name C:\classexcel.xls												
Worksheet Name Companies in OR												
	<u> </u>											

14. Click **OK**.

M	licros	oft Excel - CLASSEXCEL.XLS				×
:2	<u>F</u> ile	Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Wir	ndow <u>H</u> elp	D	_ 8	×
1		Arial • 10 • <b>B I U</b> =	= =	🔛 🗸 🏅	<mark>≫ - <u>A</u> -</mark>	•• ₹
1	12	🛬 🖾 🔁 🖄 🛛 🏷 🛛 🏂 👘 📦 🕅 Reply	with <u>C</u> hang	es E <u>r</u>	nd Review	
	B11					
	Α	В	С	D	E	F
1	ID	Name	City	State	ZipCode	
2	18	Prince Crystal Technologies, Inc.	Portland	OR	97201	
3	27	Great Lakes Food Market	Eugene	OR	97403	
4	- 35	Hungry Coyote Import Store	Elgin	OR	97827	
5	40	ULWC Micropolish Division	Portland	OR	97201	
6	- 55	Lonesome Pine Restaurant	Portland	OR	97219	
7	89	PPLM Oarsmen Discount Software Company	Portland	OR	97201	
8	153	The Big Cheese	Portland	OR	97201	
  ∙_ •	+ +	Companies in OR / Sheet2 / Sheet3 /			·	
Read	łγ					11.

#### **Excel Notes:**

- Depending on how Microsoft Excel is configured on a computer, a user may see a message box concerning automatic data refreshes before the spreadsheet opens. Select the "disable automatic refresh" option if this message appears.
- Once Microsoft Excel opens, it displays the CLASSEXCEL.XLS file, which contains the contents of the view.
- Note that the Linked Data is automatically formatted in Microsoft Excel.
- If a user only sees "Linked\_Data" in the first cell, *right click* on the cell and select **Refresh Data** from the pop-up list.
- Note that the Workbook Name a user configured appears on the spreadsheet tab.
- To manually refresh the data, *right click* within the data area and select **Refresh Data** from the pop-up list.
- 15. Return to Aptify but do NOT close Excel.
- 16. Open a Companies record the user created and change the State to OR.
- 17. Save and close the Companies record.
- 18. Open the Companies in OR view (or refresh the view if it is already open).
  - the Companies record should appear in the view (along with the Companies records of the other students in class).
- 19. Return to the CLASSEXCEL.XLS spreadsheet
- 20. Right click within the data area and select Refresh Data from the pop-up list.

M	icros	oft Exc	el - CL	ASSEXCE	L.XLS								_	
:	Eile	<u>E</u> dit	<u>V</u> iew	Insert	F <u>o</u> rma	at	<u>T</u> ools	<u>D</u> ata	<u>W</u> ir	idow <u>F</u>	<u>l</u> el	р	_	đΧ
8		Arial			- 10	•	BI	U	≣	≣ ≣		<u> </u>	🦻 - 🔼	
1	1	22	-	33	31	2	- -	) ( YW)	Reply	with ⊆ha	ang	jes E	<u>n</u> d Review	
	B1		•	fx	Name									
	Α				В					С		D	E	
1	ID	Name								City		State	ZipCoc	le 👘
2	18	Prince	Cryst	al Techr	nolog	X	Cut				Ы	OR	97201	
3	27	Great	Lakes	Food M	larke 🖁							OR	97403	
4	35	Hungry	/ Соус	ote Impo	rt St	8	Сору					OR	97827	
5	40	ULWC	Micro	opolish D	)ivisi 🛙	2	<u>P</u> aste				Ы	OR	97201	
6	55	Lones	ome P	'ine Res	taura		Paste S	ipecial			Ы	OR	97219	
7	89	PPLM	Oarsr	men Dis	coun						Ы	OR	97201	
8	153	The Bi	g Che	ese			<u>I</u> nsert.				Ы	OR	97201	
<u>a</u>  4 4	• •	Com	panies	s in OR 🏑	Shee		<u>D</u> elete.							١ř
Read	у						Clear C	ontents	;					
					ŧ	5	Insert	Co <u>m</u> mer	nt		Γ			
					E	<u></u>	<u>F</u> ormat	Cells						
					đ	3	<u>E</u> dit Qu	ery						
					E	<b>P</b>	D <u>a</u> ta R	ange Pr	opert	ies				
					d	[?]	Para <u>m</u> e	eters						
						?	<u>R</u> efrest	n Data	$\supset$					

- The new Companies records should now appear in the spreadsheet.
- 21. Open this Company record again and change the State field back to its original value.
- 22. Save and close this Companies record.
- 23. Open the Companies in OR view (or refresh the view if it is already open).
  - Only the original records should appear in the view.
- 24. On the CLASSEXCEL.XLS spreadsheet, *right click* within the data area and select **Refresh Data** from the pop-up list.
  - The spreadsheet only displays the original records.
- 25. Open the View Properties dialog for the Companies in OR view.
- 26. Click Fields and to the Selected Fields column, add the MainPhone field.
- 27. Click **OK** to return to the Aptify desktop.
  - The MainPhone field should now appear in the view.
- 28. On the CLASSEXCEL.XLS spreadsheet, *right click* within the data area and select **Refresh Data** from the pop-up list.
  - The new MainPhone field is not added to the spreadsheet. When the Excel Integration wizard's **Type** is set to **Link to Data**, Aptify updates the Excel file with changes made to the displayed fields; it does not update the Excel file to reflect changes made to a view's properties.
- 29. Close Microsoft Excel.
- 30. Close the Companies in OR view.

### **How Reporting Works**

With the Report Wizard, a View can be exported to almost any report format. The Report wizard can generate **standard reports** or **mailing labels**, **export records** to another format, **print name badges**, and more. Note that the Report Wizard automatically creates a new Lists record when generating a report. This List contains the records that appear in the selected View.

The Report Wizard walks the user through the steps to generate reports. Although there are general types of reports that apply to all of the services, most reports are service-specific. The general reports in every service are the List, Detail, and Export reports.

List and Detail reports print out the information contained in the View. Export reports are often useful for selecting specific fields and records from the service and exporting them for use in other software applications.

Other reports that are specific to a service are listed on various category tabs in the Report Wizard. Aptify ships with several service-specific reports which may be modified or replaced as required. Contact the System Administrator to add client-specific reports to a particular service.

Note that when printing mailing labels, the List ID appears on each label for marketing purposes –users can identify information about the mailing (such as when the label was printed) based on the List ID.

While the View system provides sophisticated capabilities to filter and sort data, it simply shows results in a tabular format. To provide robust output, Crystal Reports<sup>®</sup> is integrated into the View system through the Report Wizard.

**Crystal Reports** is a database reporting tool created by Crystal Decisions (http:// www.crystaldecisions.com). **An administrator can create new customized Crystal Reports for an organization but users need to purchase a license from Crystal Decisions first**.

Aptify provides a wide variety of Crystal Reports with Aptify that can be used without purchasing a license from Crystal Decisions. These reports include creating a pie chart to analyze view data or mailing labels which can be used to send new literature to customer/ members.

However, if a user wants to develop new reports or edit existing reports, they would need to purchase a license to Crystal Reports from Crystal Decisions for every developer responsible for report writing. These licenses are not provided by Aptify.

## **Running a Standard Export Report**

In this section, a user will learn how to export data from a view to a text file.

- 1. Create a new **Persons** view that displays persons whose **State** exactly matches **OR**.
- 2. After loading the view, click the **Report Wizard** icon in the toolbar.
  - Alternatively, a user can *right click* within the view and select **Report Wizard...** from the pop-up list.



3. Select the **Export** report (under the General tab) and click **Next**.

🖊 Report Wizard		 	
	Step 1: Select a Report		
	General Labels Members	ship Subscription Meetings Analysis	
2.546	Name	Description	
0.216	List	Standard Listing Report	
	Detail	Standard Detail Report	
	Export	Standard Export Report	
	Person Report	Report of Person Information	
	Person Roster	Person Roster Report	
	Persons By Company	Pie chart of persons by Company	
	Persons By ZipCode	Pie chart of persons by zipcode	
	Persons By Member Type	Pie chart of persons by membership type	
	Aptify Badge	Creates batch for each person who is attending the	
	,		
Help	Cancel	< Back Next > Finish	

4. Move the following fields to the Selected column: AddressLine1, City, FirstLast, State, and ZipCode.

🖊 Report Wizard		×
2546 0276 T = 2782	Available Selected          AddressID       Image: Selected         AddressLine1       Image: Selected         AddressLine2       Image: Selected         AddressLine3       Image: Selected         AddressLine3       Image: Selected         AddressLine4       Image: Selected         AddressLine4       Image: Selected         AssistantsAreaCode       Image: Selected         AssistantsCountryCode       Image: Selected         Export Type       Image: Selected         Delimited       Image: Selected	
	Comma Delimited Text Qualifier     Tab Delimited     Other	
Heip	Cancel < Back Next >	Finish

- 5. Click Next to continue.
- 6. Click **Finish** to create the export file.
  - Users will use the default file name and location for this file. The wizard will create a file called **export.txt** and place it in their computer's C: root folder.

🖊 Report Wizard		×
	Export File c:vexport.txt	
Help	Cancel < Back Next > Finish	

- 7. Click **OK** when prompted that the export operation has completed successfully.
  - If a user wants to see what the exported data looks like, they can open the export.txt file using Notepad. It will look something like this:

📄 export.txt - Notepad
<u>File Edit Format View Help</u>
<pre>['ID", "FirstLast", "AddressLine1", "City", "State", "ZipCode" "18", "Sabrina Lewis", "5776 South Lakeshore Lane", "Portland", "OR", "97201" "27", "Baker Isador", "2732 Baker Blvd.", "Eugene", "OR", "97403" "35", "Herbert Johnson", "City Center Plaza 516 Main St.", "Elgin", "OR", "97827" "40", "Michael wade", "939 Silver Canyon Street", "Portland", "OR", "97201" "55", "Dahlia Neal", "89 Chiaroscuro Rd.", "Portland", "OR", "97219" "89", "Paul Robinson", "1255 Ironwood Avenue", "Portland", "OR", "97201" "153", "Baka Isador", "89 Jefferson Way Suite 2", "Portland", "OR", "97201" "360", "Dacey Baldwin", "5776 South Lakeshore Lane", "Portland", "OR", "97201" "369", "Odessa Isador", "2732 Baker Blvd.", "Eugene", "OR", "97403"</pre>

• After creating the export file, a user can import its contents into another program, such as Microsoft Word or Excel.

## **Running a Crystal Report**

In this section, users learn how to run two specific Crystal Reports.

### **Running an Analysis Report**

- 1. Open the Companies Service and click to open the General Look up Views folder.
- 2. Run a view such as, All Companies. At the top of the view, Click the Report Wizard icon.

Report Wizard		×	
	Step 1: Select a Report		
	General Membership An	alysis Label	
2.546	Name	Description	
0.216 T = 2.792	List	Standard Listing Report	
	Detail	Standard Detail Report	
	Export	Standard Export Report	
	Company	Report of Company Information	
	Company Profile	Report of Company information, order history, and co	
• The Ren			

- The Report Wizard launches and displays the list of reports supported by the Companies service.
- 3. Select the Analysis tab.
- 4. Select the **Pie Chart by State** report. (Note that this is a Crystal Report.)

🖊 Report Wizard			×
	Step 1: Select a Report		
	General Membership Ana	alysis Label	
2.546	Name	Description	
0.216 T = 2.762	Pie Chart By State	Distribution of Companies, Grouped By State	

- 5. Click Next.
- 6. Click **Finish** to preview the report.
  - A window opens that contains the report. The company data on the class system differs from the example below but the results should look something like this:



- A user can print the report from this screen.
- 7. Double-click one of the California slices in the pie chart.
  - This displays the records that correspond to the pie slice.
  - Click the *grey* **X** in the upper right-hand corner of the view to return to the main screen of the report.
- 8. Click the **X** in the upper right-hand corner of the Crystal Reports window to close the report.

### **Creating Mailing Labels with Crystal Reports**

- 1. Open the **Persons in OR** view created previously.
- 2. Click the **Report Wizard** icon in the toolbar.
- 3. Select the Labels tab.
- 4. Select Avery 5161 Label and click Finish.
  - If a user had a printer with the Avery 5161 Label sheets, they could print out the labels directly from the Crystal Report window.
  - Alternatively, a user could export the report to another format by clicking the **Export** icon in the Crystal Reports toolbar (the envelope icon).

🖟 Crystal Report Viev	<i>i</i> er	
🍜 😎 🔲 🚼 🛛	₩ ◀ ▶ ₩  1	Ð
SABRINA LEWIS/PR 5776 South Lakesho PORTLAND OR 9720	NINCE CRYSTAL TECHNOL re Lane 01	OGIES, INC.
BAKER ISADOR/GRI 2732 Baker Blvd. ÉUGENE OR 97403	EAT LAKES FOOD MARKE	T
<u>ا</u>		
Current Page No.: 1	Total Page No.: 1+	Zoom Factor: 100%

5. Close the Crystal Report.

# Chapter



# **Contact Logs**

Objective	6.1
Understanding Contact Logs	6.2
Creating a Contact Log from the Persons Service	6.3
Creating a Contact Log Record from the Employees Service	6.5
Creating a Quick Contact Log Record from a Persons View	6.6

## **Objective**

In this section, users will understand how to use the Contact Log service. Contact Logs are used to track customer interactions throughout the Aptify system. They can be created manually from several locations or automatically created as part of a process flow.

After completing this chapter, users will be able to:

- Understand Contact Logs
- Create a Contact Log from the:
  - Persons Service
  - Employees Service
  - Contact Log Service

## **Understanding Contact Logs**

Users can keep track of their interactions with customers by creating a Contact Log record each time they communicate with a customer (via mail, telephone, fax, e-mail, etc.).

Users can <u>link a Contact Log record to one or more related records in another service</u>. For example, a Contact Log record detailing a telephone conversation with Anthony Atkins regarding a specific order can be linked to Anthony Atkins's Persons record, an Employees record, and the relevant Orders record.

The **Contact Logs service also integrates with Microsoft Outlook.** If an organization uses Microsoft Outlook for email, follow-up appointments scheduled within a Contact Log record automatically appear in the Outlook Calendar.

**Users can create a Contact Log from the Contact Log tab on another form**, such as the Persons, Employees, or Orders form. When a new Contact Log record is opened from a Persons, Employees, or Orders record, Aptify automatically adds a link to that record in the new Contact Log's Link tab.

Users can also <u>quickly record a **Contact Log** record from the **Persons View**.</u> If a user right clicks on a Persons record, selects Person Options, automatically either a "Left Voice Mail" or "Record Phone Call" contact will be created.

### **Creating a Contact Log from the Persons Service**

A user can create a Contact Log record from the Persons, Employees, Orders, or Contact Log service. In this exercise, a user will create a Contact Log record from a Persons record.

- 1. Open a **Persons** record.
- 2. Select the **Contact Log** tab.
- 3. To open a new Contact Log record, in the toolbar, click the New Record button.
  - Aptify automatically fills in the Date/Time field with the current date and time.
- 4. In the **Description** field, enter **XYZ** Contact Log (where *XYZ* are your initials).
- 5. Leave the Type field set to Phone and Category set to Sales.
- 6. Change the **Direction** to **Inbound** (customer initiated contact).
- 7. On the **Next Contact** tab, enter the last day of the current month and a time of 8:30 AM in the **Date/Time** field.
  - For example, 12/31/20xx (xx=year) 8:30 AM (no periods)
- 8. From the Status drop-down list, select In-Progress.
- 9. In the Assigned To field, enter the Persons record created previously in training.
- 10. In the Forward field, enter Juan Carlos.
- 11. In the Reason field, enter Call XYZ Company with requested information.

New Contact Log Record
🔜 😼 🐏 🏥 🗶 🔛 🔝 🖏 🗞 🖘 🦃 🦓 😯 🔅 += 🔗 🛞 🚛
Date 2/9/2009 1:57:50 PM
Description Request for information from XYZ Company representative
Type Phone Creator
Category Sales
Direction Inbound
Next Contact Details Links 📭 🖁 Topic Codes 🐲 Follow Ups Attachments
Date/Time 2/28/2009 8:30 AM
Status In-Progress
Priority Medium
Parent 🗎 🗙
Assigned To John Samuels 🕺 🗙
Forward Juan Carlos
Reason Call XYZ Company with requested information

12. Click Save and Close.

- 13. When a Contact Log is created and saved:
  - Aptify auto-adds user name to the Creator field (After Saving & Closing).
  - If Microsoft Outlook is installed on the computer, Aptify automatically creates an appointment based on the information provided within the Next Contact tab.

📰 Call JMS Company with requested information - Appointment	
Eile Edit View Insert Format Tools Actions Help	
🗄 🛃 Save and Close   🎒 🍵   🕂 Recurrence   🎬 Invite Attendees   📍 🦊   🗙   📥 🗸 🦉	
Appointment Scheduling	
Subject: Call JMS Company with requested information	
Label: None	
Start time:         Mon 12/31/2007         Image: Start time:         All day event           End time:         Mon 12/31/2007         Image: Start time:         Start time:<	
Reminder: 15 minutes Show time as: Free	
Contact Log 315.APTFRM (90 B). Call JMS Company with requested information	4
Categories Priva	I ate

- 14. On the Contact Log record, select the Links tab.
  - There should already be two links listed on this screen. Aptify automatically adds a link to Persons record and that person's Companies record from which the user opened the new Contact Log record.

Abstract Categories Add Del Record ID Link Type Name	Link Type Abstract Categories				
Record ID Link Type Name	ete				
1 Persons Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners Phone: 1(650)750-9187 E-mail: Aiesha.Baldwin@demodata.aptify.com					
1 Companies Danube Partners Phone: 1(650)750-9187 E-mail:main@danupar.com					

- 15. Click **Save and Close** to save and close the record.
- 16. Return to the **Persons** record and note that the Contact Log record now appears in the Persons record's Contact Log (Incomplete tab).
- 17. Close the **Persons** record.

# Creating a Contact Log Record from the Employees Service

Users can create a Contact Log record from the Persons, Employees, Orders, or Contact Log service. This exercise, will create a Contact Log record from a Employees record.

- 1. Open the Employees record that corresponds to the Aptify User Account.
  - When in class, an instructor can assist if you cannot identify which Employees record is linked to your User Account.
- 2. Select the **Contact Log** tab.
  - This tab should already list the Contact Log created in Exercise 1.
- 3. In the toolbar, click the New Record button to open a new Contact Log record.
- 4. In the Description field, enter Sent introductory e-mail to XYZ Company representative.
- 5. From the **Type** drop-down list, select **E-Mail**.
- 6. On the Next Contact tab, from the Status drop-down list, select Complete.
- 7. Click Save.
- 8. Select the **Details** tab and enter text.
  - For example, a user could paste the text of an e-mail message in this field.
- 9. Select the Links tab.
- 10. From the Link Type drop-down list, select Persons.
- 11. In the Link field, enter your Persons record and click the Tab key.
- 12. Click Add to add the link to the Contact Log record.
- 13. Click Save and Close to save changes and close the record.
- 14. Return to the **Employees** record and note that two **Contact Log** records now appear in the Contact Log tab.
- 15. Close the Employees record.
- 16. Open the **Persons** record.
- 17. Select the Contact Log Complete tab.
  - Note that the Contact Log record created in this exercise was added to the Person's **Contact Log > Complete** tab rather than the **Contact Log > Incomplete** tab since the Contact Log's Status was set to Complete.
- 18. Close the Persons record.

**IMPORTANT NOTE:** As a rule, users should NOT create Contact Logs from the Contact Log service as the Contact Log will then NOT be linked to any Persons, Company, or Employee record. Users should instead create MOST contact logs from those services. Users should use the Contact Log service to create VIEWS of Contact Logs.

### Creating a Quick Contact Log Record from a Persons View

Users can create a quick Contact Log record from a View of Persons. There are two process flows tied to views: Left Voice Mail and Record Phone Call. The following exercise will take users through the use of these quick contact logs.

- 1. Run the San Francisco Student Members view (shortcut).
- 2. Click once on the first record in the View to select (but not open); *right click* this record.
- 3. Float over the **Persons** Options selection from the drop-down list.
- 4. Select Left Voice Mail.

B	2	🚽 🗙 🛛 🖬	In Place E	idit   🔙 📊 Reports 🧥	📲 Add To L	ist 📳 💁 💲	🔢 Preview 💧	
Sa	San Francisco Student Members							
	ID	First Name	Last Name	Company		Title	Member Type	
	48	Wainwright	Jackson	Let's Stop N Shop	Advertising As	sociate	Student Member	
	90	Quillan	Byrd	New Record	Ctrl+N	ort Senior VP	Student Member	
	390	John	Jack	Open Record	Ctrl+O	ce	Student Member	
	1339	Andrew	Wall			e VP	Student Member	
	1458	Reginald	Rob	Delete	Del	offing Comisso	Student Member	
	1758	Mason	Low	Persons Ontions	•	Left Voice Ma	ail i	
	2100	Brian	Jone			Eere voice m		
	2484	Emily	May	Add to List	Ctrl+A	Record Phon	e Call	
				Report Wizard	Ctrl+R			
				Drint Pecard				

- A Contact Log is automatically created under that Persons' Contact Log tab
- 5. Click to open the **Persons** record.
- 6. Select Contact Log tab to view the Contact Log format.
- 7. The Contact Log will be placed under the Contact Log, Select the **Complete tab**. Close the box.
- 8. *Right click* on the **Persons** record, **Persons Options** again. Float over the **Persons** Options selection from the drop-down list
- 9. This time select Record Phone Call.

10. The Contact Log automatically **Opens**, as it assumes the user is speaking to a person.

💪 Contact	Log ID: 6816
🔜 🖦 🖦	i 💼 👭 🚘 💷 i 📚 🖘 i 🐄 🎭 🎨 🔅 🕶 🔗 🛞 🖕
Date	12/23/2013
Description	Talked to Jackson, Wainwright/Let's Stop N Shop
Type	Phone Creator Dortiz
Category	Sales
Direction	Outbound
Attachmer	its
📧 Next C	ontact 🎒 Details 🔗 Links 🔀 Topic Codes 🐛 Follow Ups
Date/T	ime Create Follow-Up
Sta	itus Incomplete
Prio	rity Medium
Par	
Assigned	and A Contiz
Rea	son

- 11. Note Contact Log box to easily enter information.
- 12. Close box.

# Chapter



## **Case Management**

Objective	
Creating Cases	
Reviewing Cases	

## Objective

Users will be able to:

- Create Cases
- Track Cases from inception to conclusion

### Overview

Case management is included in the Aptify CRM application to allow organizations to track their customer's inquiries and their resolution. Individual Cases track incidents, or "tickets" as some organizations call them. This allows each customer request to be tracked, allows each request to be monitored through its individual process and supports the creation of detailed customer histories. Some examples where Case Management can be used:

- Track Initial Customer Inquiries
- IT Help Desk
- Customer Support requests and Ticketing
- Sales Inquiries

### **Creating Cases**

### **Using the New Cases Wizard**

- 1. Click the Case Management dashboard shortcut.
- 2. Click the New Case wizard button.



- 3. In the **Company** field, enter the name of **XYZ company** that submitted the case.
- 4. In the **Contact** field, enter the name of the person.
- 5. In the **Source** field, specify the source of the case as **External**.
- 6. In the **Date Reported** field, confirm that today's date appears.
- 7. In the **Recorded By** field, confirm your name (if not automatically populated).
- 8. For the Case Report Method, select phone.
- 9. In the **Contact Log Description** field, enter a description which will be generated automatically when this new case is created. This will tie the Contact Log to this new case.

Aptify	Welcome to the New Case Wizard This wizard will step you through the process of creating a new Case and any relevant Contact Log entries and workflow Tasks related to this case.			
New Case	Please enter Contact	Information		
27	<u>Company</u>	XYZ Corporation	X	
Wizard	<u>Contact</u>	Aaronson, Edward/Danube Partners	X	
	Source	External	X	
Steps:	Date Recorded	2/17/2009		
Contact Details	Recorded By	Dave O'Connell	X	
Assignment Details	Case Report Method	Phone 💌		
	Contact Log Description	Test		<u> </u>
				V
	Cance	el Back Next		Finish

- 10. Click the Next button.
- 11. For case Title enter, XYZ Case
- 12. Choose a Category of Finance.
- 13. Enter a **Priority** of **High**
- 14. Enter Type of Complaint
- 15. Enter a Summary of "Customer was billed incorrectly"

🗡 Aptify New Case Wi	izard		X
Antifu-®	Please enter Case I	nformation	
Apiny	Case Title	XYZ Case	
New Case	Category	Finance	
	Priority	High	
	Туре	Complaint	
Wizard	Summary	Customer was billed incorrectly.	
Steps:			
Contact Details Case Details Assignment Details	Case Description		
	Special Needs		
	Ca	ncel Back Next Fini	ish

16. Click the Next button

- 17. For the Primary Designee, select an employee record. For class enter ID #1
- 18. For Manager, select an employee record. For class, enter Linda Jameson.

🕂 Aptify New Case Wiz	zard	x
Aptify	Please enter Assignment Information	
New Case	Primary Assignee     Dave O'Connell       Manager     Linda Jameson       Comments	
Steps: Contact Details Case Details Assignment Details		
	Cancel Back Next	Finish

- 19. Click the Finish button
- 20. Observe the success message and click the **OK** button.



## **Reviewing Cases**

- 1. **Open** the case just created.
- 2. Click the Status drop-down and select Completed.
- 3. For Date Closed, select today's date.
- 4. For the Closed By employee select ID #1.

崎 Cases ID: 3724	
😹 🗞 🖏 🗙 🏢 🛤 😭 🗉 🥘 🕻	g 📭 🚏 🖶 🛞 🎲 🖛 🎯 🛞 💂
Title XYZ Case	
Parent	₩×
Status Reported	Priority High
Category Finance	Type Complaint
Company XYZ Corporation	× ×
Contact Aaronson, Edward/Danub	e Partners 🛛 🕺 🗙
Summary Customer was billed incom	ectly.
👼 Satisfaction 🙍 Summary 🍃 Comm	ents Attachments
General 🦪 Details Assignees Costs	🐉 Contact Log 🛛 Tasks 🔯 Sub-Cases 🛛 Related Issues 📑 Location
Timeline	Same Esteral
Date Reported 2/17/2009	
Est. Start Date	
Date Started 2/17/2009	
Est. Completion Date	Assignment
Date Closed 2/17/2009	
Closed By Dave O'Coppell	
	Primary Assignee Role
	Date Assigned External
Reason	External Company
	External Contact

- 5. Open the **Contact Log** tab.
- 6. Observe the **Contact Log** that was created using the **Wizard**.

- 7. Select the Tasks tab
- 8. **Open** the **Task** that was created using the Wizard.
  - Tasks can be used for the tracking of small projects
  - Users can associate Main Tasks and multiple sub-tasks. Sub-Tasks can be rolled up to track hours for a project

🖓 Tasks ID: 14389			
<b>3 4 6</b>	) 🕅 🔂 🗉	🏷 🖏	🔤 🐚 🖓 😳 🔅 🖛 🐼 🔞 🔒 🖕
Name	Case Test		
Type	General		AA ×
Description			
Status	Not Started		Priority Normal
<u>Parent</u>			$\mathbb{A}$ $\times$
General Lin	ks Predeces	sors 🚺	Sub-Tasks Attributes Attachments
Dates			
Assigned	11/7/2011		Due
Started		Co	ompleted
Assigned By	John Samuel	<u>s</u>	A ×
Assigned To	Adam Smith		**
% Complete	0		
Hours	Estimate	Actual	Variance
Hours	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000
Rollup	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000
Total	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000

- 9. Close the Task record.
- 10. Save and Close the Case.

# Chapter



## Committees

Objectives	8.1
Creating a Committees Record	8.2
Creating Committee Terms	8.3
Adding Members from a View	8.4
Adding Members from a Record	8.7
Editing Member Information	8.8

### **Objectives**

In this section, users will work with the Committee Management application. When finished, a user will be able to:

- Create a Committee record
- Create Committee Terms
- Add members to committee terms
- · Assign titles and ranks to committee members

### **Overview**

Organizations frequently assemble committees to focus on specific tasks or events. The committee may be designed to operate for one function for a <u>short period of time</u>, such as organizing a corporate event, or it may be a <u>long-term project</u> that operates indefinitely. Additionally committees may be organized into sub-committees.

Aptify's Committee Management application provides diverse functionality to address the varying committee structures of an organization. The Committee Management application includes two services. The **Committees** service tracks the overall information about the committee and its purpose. The **Committee Terms** service tracks similar information, but the information is specific to the scope of the particular term. For instance, a committee may be designed to schedule a particular event, and its mission may be to successfully hold the event and stay within a budget. A committee term could be created to handle the tasks up until the event occurs, and then another committee term could be created to handled all the follow-up tasks. Each committee term could have its own schedule and purpose. In Aptify, members are associated with the Committee Terms record, which requires each committee to have at least one committee term linked to it.

**Note:** If a user's organization does not use Committee Terms, they would create one Committee and one Committee Term for each Committee.

### **Creating a Committees Record**

- 1. Click on the Committee Management Application, then Committees Service.
- 2. *Right click* the Committees service and select create New Committees Record.
- 3. In the Name field, enter XYZ Finance Committee (XYZ= your initials).
- 4. In the Organization field, enter an ID number of 1, click Tab.
- 5. From the Committee Type drop-down, select Standards.
- 6. In the Coordinator field, enter (number) 1, click Tab to auto-fill.
- 7. In the **Description** field, enter **Balance Budget**.
- 8. In the Goal field, enter Balance Budget.
- 9. From the Reach drop-down list, select National.
- 10. In the **Date Founded** field, enter a date (ELEVEN MONTHS PRIOR TO TODAY'S DATE).

🍓 Committees	ID: 4	
🛃 😼 🔩 🗙	i 💼 👬 🖆 🗉 🦃 🗞 🖘 🧤 🦃 😵 🎲 🕶 ⊗ 🛞 🖕	
Name	XYZ Finance Committee	
Parent		X
Organization	XYZ Organization	X
Committee Type	Standards	-
General Terms	; Members 🗱 Meetings 📶 Products 🛛 Attachments	
Coordinator	Juan Carlos	X
Description	XYZ Finance Committee	
Goals	To pass a sound and balanced budget per year in a timely manner	<b>^</b>
Deach	National	
Data Soundad	1/1/2002	
Date Founded		
	T HUITE	

11. Click Save.
# **Creating Committee Terms**

The Committee Term records tracks individual terms of different committees and their info.

- 1. Select the Terms tab on your Committees record.
- 2. Click the New Record button in the toolbar.
  - A new Committee Terms record appears.
  - Aptify automatically fills in the Committee field and the Start Date.
- 3. In the Name field, enter XYZ Finance Committee 20XX (committee term name.
- 4. In the Director field, enter your Persons record name.
- 5. Enter the Start Date as (11 MONTHS PRIOR TO TODAY'S DATE).
- 6. Enter the **End Date** as (1 MONTH IN THE FUTURE FROM TODAY'S DATE).

🚱 New Committee Terms Record	×
🛃 😼 📲 🏥 🗶 🖆 🗐 🥘 🔇 📼 🥞 🥵 🎲 🕶 🔗 🛞 🖕	
Name XYZ Finance Committee 2006	
Committee XYZ Finance Committee	
Director Miller, Ian/Kumpulan Guthrie Berhad 🔉 🛪 🗙	
General Meetings Members Nominees Active Members In-Active Members Attachments	
Start Date 1/1/2006	
End Date 12/31/2006	
Term Email	-
Goals	
Accomplishments	
Suppose	$\exists$
Summary	
Allow Duplicate Members	

7. Click Save and Close.

# Adding Members from a View

- 1. Click on the San Francisco Student Members View shortcut.
- 2. Select the first **Person** in the view.
- 3. Click the Add Persons to Committees... button.

Þ	2	🛃 🗙 🔯 In Place Edit 🛛	🔙 📊 Reports   🎆 🔒 Ad	ld To List 📲 💁 💲 🔢 Preview	📢 🖥 🖨 🖨 😭		
Ot	Ottoman Add Person To Committees						
4	ID	First Name	Last Name	Company	Title		
	4	Baka	Lambert	Ottoman	President		
	346	Pablo	Harris	Ottoman	Advertising Manager		
	688	Edward	King	Ottoman	Director, Sales		
	1030	Valerie	Garner	Ottoman	Marketing Senior Director		
	1372	Jessica	Hale	Ottoman	Advertising Associate VP		
	1714	Yale	Wade	Ottoman	Director, Information Technology		
	2056	Gary	Carter	Ottoman	Marketing Director		
	2398	Xia	Johnson	Ottoman	VP, Research		

4. Click No to add all Persons in the view, when prompted.

Add Person To	Committees Wi	zard	
Add	all of the people in	the view to com	nittees?
Clid Clid Clid	k Yes to add all peo k No to add only th k Cancel to not add	pple in the view to e selected rows to l any people to cor	committees committees mmittees.
	Yes	No	Cancel

- 5. From the Filters options in the Select Committee Terms window, select **All Committee Terms**.
  - This displays all Committee Terms in the system regardless of their Start/End Dates.
- 6. Select the Selected checkbox for each of your XYZ Finance Committee terms.

🗡 Select Comm	nittee Terms					<u>_                                      </u>
Add Person(s)	;) as Member 🛛 🔿	Add Person(s) as N	lominee			
Filters O Current Com	Filters - O Current Committee Terms O Past Committee Terms O Future Committee Terms O All Committee Terms					
Selected	ID	Committee	Term	Start Date	End Date	Ri📥
	33	Board of Directors	2007 BOD	1/1/2007	12/31/2007	
	41	Furniture Standar	2007 Standards C	1/1/2007	12/31/2007	
	46	XYZ Finance Comr	XYZ Finance Comr	1/1/2007	12/31/2007	
	22	Audit Committee	2006 Audit Commi	1/1/2006	12/31/2006	
	10	Board of Directors	2006 BOD	1/1/2006	12/31/2006	
	32	Furniture Standar	2006 Standards C	1/1/2006	12/31/2006	
	45	XYZ Finance Comr	XYZ Finance Comr	1/1/2006	12/31/2006	
	21	Audit Committee	2005 Audit Commi	1/1/2005	12/31/2005	-
•						•
					ОК	Cancel

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Click **Yes** to confirm the addition of the people from the view to the selected committee terms.
- 9. Click **OK** when prompted that the people were successfully added to the committee terms.
- 10. Open the All Persons view and sort the records by ID (if not already sorted).
- 11. Select the first record.
- 12. Hold down the CTRL key and select the second record.
  - Two records should now be selected.
- 13. Click the Add Persons to Committees... button.
- 14. When prompted, click No to add only the two selected Persons to committees.
- 15. Select **All Committee Terms** from the Filters options in the Select Committee Terms window. Re-sort the Committee Term records by ID if they are not already sorted this way.
- 16. Expand the box to full screen to see all fields. Place a check mark in the **Voting Member** box (far right) for your *XYZ* Finance Committee 20xx term only
- 17. Place a check mark in the **Selected** box for your *XYZ* Finance Committee 20xx term only.

🗡 Select Comm	nittee Terms					<u>- 🗆 ×</u>
Add Person(s) as Member O Add Person(s) as Nominee						
Filters C Current Com	Filters O Current Committee Terms O Past Committee Terms O Future Committee Terms I All Committee Terms					
Selected	ID	Committee	Term	Start Date	End Date	Ra 🔺
	37	Audit Committee	2007 Audit Commi	1/1/2007	12/31/2007	
	33	Board of Directors	2007 BOD	1/1/2007	12/31/2007	
	41	Furniture Standar	2007 Standards C	1/1/2007	12/31/2007	
	46	XYZ Finance Comr	XYZ Finance Comr	1/1/2007	12/31/2007	
	22	Audit Committee	2006 Audit Commi	1/1/2006	12/31/2006	
	10	Board of Directors	2006 BOD	1/1/2006	12/31/2006	
	32	Furniture Standar	2006 Standards C	1/1/2006	12/31/2006	
	45	XYZ Finance Comr	XYZ Finance Comr	1/1/2006	12/31/2006	•
•						
					ок	Cancel

- 18. Click **OK**.
- 19. Click **Yes** to confirm the addition of two people to the selected committee terms.
- 20. Click **OK** when prompted that the people were successfully added to the committee terms.
- 21. Open the second record and select the Committees tab.
  - Note that this screen now displays the person's Committee Term.
- 22. Close the record.

# **Adding Members from a Record**

- 1. Open the **Persons** record created at the start of the class.
- 2. Select the **Committees** tab.
- 3. Click the Add to Committees button.
- 4. From Filters options in Select Committee Terms window, select All Committee Terms
- 5. In the **Voting Member** box and the **Selected** box for your *XYZ* Finance Committee terms, place a check mark.
- 6. In the **Rank** column for each term, Enter **2**.

🗡 Select Comm	nittee Terms					
Add Person(s) as Member C Add Person(s) as Nominee						
C Current Com	mittee Terms 🛛 🔿	Past Committee Te	rms 🔿 Future Co	ommittee Terms (	All Committee	e Terms
Selected	ID	Committee	Term	Start Date	End Date	Ra 🔺
	41	Furniture Standar	2007 Standards C	1/1/2007	12/31/2007	
V	46	XYZ Finance Comr	XYZ Finance Comr	1/1/2007	12/31/2007	
	22	Audit Committee	2006 Audit Commi	1/1/2006	12/31/2006	
	10	Board of Directors	2006 BOD	1/1/2006	12/31/2006	
	32	Furniture Standar	2006 Standards C	1/1/2006	12/31/2006	
	45	XYZ Finance Comr	XYZ Finance Comr	1/1/2006	12/31/2006	
	21	Audit Committee	2005 Audit Commi	1/1/2005	12/31/2005	
	9	Board of Directors	2005 BOD	1/1/2005	12/31/2005	<b>–</b>
•						•
					ОК	Cancel

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Click Yes to confirm the addition to the selected committee terms.
- 9. Click **OK** when prompted that Person was successfully added to the committee terms.
  - Committee terms should now appear Persons record's Committee tab. A user can edit or delete a Person's Committee term settings by *right clicking* on an entry.

🐩 Persons ID: 2528				
🔜 😼 🗞 🗙 🏢 🕯	M 📷 💷   🐂	> 🗞	🔤   🦆 🍓 🎲   🕶 🔗   (	🛛 🕕 📮
Name 📃 💌	Dave		O'Connell	
Title Director 1	Fraining			
Company				×
🖏 Contact   <i> D</i> etails 🏭 Committees 👔 An	alysis Awards	ip 丨 🏈   🍋 Pi	; Functions   🐲 Contact Log   🔝 Or ctures   🍃 Comments   Attachment	rders 🖳 Subscriptions 🎆 Meetings 🛛
Add to Committees				
Committee Term	Voting Member	Rank	Committee Name	Person Title
XYZ Finance Committee		0	XYZ Finance Committee	
XYZ Finance Committee		0	XYZ Finance Committee	

10. Close the Persons record.

# **Editing Member Information**

- 1. Open the previously created XYZ Finance Committee record.
- 2. Select the Members tab.
  - This tab displays all of the members of all of the Committee Terms. Note- those members who are in both Committee Terms are listed twice (once per term).

Committees	ID: 4				_				
🚽 🔩 🔩 🗙	📋 👬 🗋	j 🗉   🏷 🗞   🏎	🖥 🌆 🛞 🎲 l 🕶 🕻	ے 🕦 🕥 ا					
Name	XYZ Finance	Committee							
Parent					d	<b>X</b> >			
Organization	XYZ Organiz	ation			þ	*			
Committee Type	Standards					•			
General Terms	Members	Meetings	ucts Attachments						
🖹 🎽 🗙 I	📲 📊 Rep	ports 🦓 💾 Add To	List 🕙 ይ 💲 📴	E 😼					
				Members of XYZ Finance Committee - All (Page 1 of 4)					
Members	of XYZ	Finance Comm	nittee - All (Pag	ge 1 of 4)	_				
Members	of XYZ D	Finance Comm Member	nittee - All (Pag Term	ge 1 of 4) <sub>Rank</sub>					
Members	of XYZ D	Finance Comm Member Lambert, Baka/Ottoman	nittee - All (Pag Term XYZ Finance Committee	ge 1 of 4) Rank	0				
Members	of XYZ D 4 346	Finance Comm Member Lambert, Baka/Ottoman Harris, Pablo/Ottoman	nittee - All (Pag Term XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee	ge 1 of 4) <sub>Rank</sub>	0				
Members	of XYZ D 4 346 688	Finance Comm Member Lambert, Baka/Ottoman Harris, Pablo/Ottoman King, Edward/Ottoman	Term Term XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee	ge 1 of 4) <sub>Rank</sub>	0				
Members	of XYZ D 4 346 688 1030	Finance Comm Member Lambert, Baka/Ottoman Harris, Pablo/Ottoman King, Edward/Ottoman Garner, Valerie/Ottomar	Term Term XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee	ge 1 of 4) <sub>Rank</sub>	0 0 0 0				
Members	of XYZ D 4 346 688 1030 1372	Finance Comm Member Lambert, Baka/Ottoman Harris, Pablo/Ottoman King, Edward/Ottoman Garner, Valerie/Ottoman Hale, Jessica/Ottoman	Term XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee	ge 1 of 4) Rank	0 0 0 0 0 0				
Members	of XYZ D 4 346 688 1030 1372 1714	Finance Comm Member Lambert, Baka/Ottoman Harris, Pablo/Ottoman King, Edward/Ottoman Garner, Valerie/Ottoman Hale, Jessica/Ottoman Wade, Yale/Ottoman	Term XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee	ge 1 of 4) <sub>Rank</sub>	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0				
Members I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I	of XYZ D 4 346 688 1030 1372 1714 2056	Finance Comm Member Lambert, Baka/Ottoman Harris, Pablo/Ottoman King, Edward/Ottoman Garner, Valerie/Ottoman Hale, Jessica/Ottoman Wade, Yale/Ottoman Carter, Gary/Ottoman	Term YVZ Finance Committee XVZ Finance Committee XVZ Finance Committee XVZ Finance Committee XVZ Finance Committee XVZ Finance Committee XVZ Finance Committee	ge 1 of 4) Rank	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0				
Members	of XYZ D 4 346 688 1030 1372 1714 2056 2398	Finance Comm Member Lambert, Baka/Ottoman Harris, Pablo/Ottoman King, Edward/Ottoman Garner, Valerie/Ottoman Hale, Jessica/Ottoman Wade, Yale/Ottoman Carter, Gary/Ottoman Johnson, Xia/Ottoman	Term XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee	ge 1 of 4) Rank	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0				
Members	of XYZ D 4 346 688 1030 1372 1714 2056 2398 1	Finance Comm Member Lambert, Baka/Ottoman Harris, Pablo/Ottoman King, Edward/Ottoman Garner, Valerie/Ottoman Hale, Jessica/Ottoman Wade, Yale/Ottoman Carter, Gary/Ottoman Johnson, Xia/Ottoman Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube	Term XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee	ge 1 of 4) Rank	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0				
Members	of XYZ D 4 346 688 1030 1372 1714 2056 2398 1	Finance Comm Member Lambert, Baka/Ottoman Harris, Pablo/Ottoman King, Edward/Ottoman Garner, Valerie/Ottoman Hale, Jessica/Ottoman Wade, Yale/Ottoman Carter, Gary/Ottoman Johnson, Xia/Ottoman Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube	Term XYZ Finance Committee XYZ Finance Committee	ge 1 of 4) Rank					

- 3. Select the **Terms** tab.
- 4. To open the Committee Term record, double-click XYZ Finance Committee 20xx.
- 5. Select the Members tab.
- 6. To open the corresponding **Committee Term Members** record, double-click the first record entry.
- 7. In the **Rank** field, enter **1**.
- 8. In the **Title** field, enter **Chairman**.
- 9. Change the Start Date to 1/1/20xx and the End Date to 12/31/20xx.
- 10. In the Voting Member box, place a checkmark.

Members Record			
General	2		
Committee Term	XYZ Finance Committee 2006		$\mathbb{A} \times$
<u>Member</u>	King, Edward/Ottoman		X
. Rank	1		
Title	Chairman		
Role			$\mathbf{A}$
	Voting Member		
Region			
Start Date	1/1/2006		
End Date	12/31/2006		
Goals			<u>_</u>
			-
Accomplishments			
Summary			
		ок	Cancel

11. Click **OK**.

🙀 Committee Terms ID: 4	5					
🛃 🔩 🔩 🗙 🏢 🕅 🕻	j 🗉 🚯 🗞 🔤	🍯 🛃 🚯 🎲 l 🕶	😥 💿 🕕 🖕			
Name XYZ Finance Con	nmittee 2006					
Committee XYZ Finance Con	nmittee	X				
Director Miller, Ian/Kump	ulan Guthrie Berhad	×				
General Meetings Memb	ers Nominees Active	Members In-Active M	Members Attachments			
🖹 🧉 🗙 🚛 📊 Rej	🖹 🧭 🗙 🔚 📊 Reports 👗 📲 Add To List 🖳 😤 🚍 🗃 🛒					
In-Active Members						
ID	Member	Rank	- Title			
1030	Garner, Valerie/Ottomar		1			

- 12. Open the second Committee Term Members record.
- 13. Change the Start Date to 12/1/20xx.
- 14. Change the **End Date** to yesterday.
- 15. Click OK.
- 16. Click Save to save these changes to the Committee Terms record.
- 17. Click the In-Active Members tab.
  - That person should now be listed as an inactive member since term has expired.
- 18. Select the Nominees tab.
- 19. Open a new Committee Term Nominees record.
- 20. In the Member field, enter Jensen, Pamela. (This field links to the Persons service.)
- 21. In the Title field, Enter Secretary.
- 22. In the Rank field, enter 3.

Nominees Re	ecord
General	
Member	Jensen, Pamela/Old World Delicatessen
Title	Secretary
Rank	3
Summary	

- 23. Click OK.
- 24. Save and Close the Committee Terms record and then the Committees record.

# Chapter



# **Products & Inventory**

Objective	
Understanding Products	
Creating a New Products Record	
Understanding Pricing	
Adding Prices to a Product	
Creating a Related Product Prompt	
Inventory Objectives	
Creating an Inventory Location	9.11
Creating a Product Inventory Ledger	
Creating a Product Inventory Ledger Entry	
General and Prerequisites Subtabs	9.15
Creating a Kit Product	

# Objective

In this lab, users will add products to the Aptify system. This includes:

- Understanding products
- Creating a new products record
- Adding prices to a product
- Creating a Related Product Prompt
- Creating a Kit Product
- Creating an Inventory Location
- Creating a Product Inventory Ledger
- Creating a Product Inventory Ledger Entry

# **Understanding Products**

### **Product Types**

Aptfiy groups similar products together based on required functionality. Basic products use a **General** type designation. **Extended** products use a name-specific designation.

All Products fit into these 6 General and Extended Types:

General

**Publications** 

Meetings

Expos

Housing

Classes

Publications, Meetings, Expos, and Housing are all Extended Products Types. When a user specifies a product type other than General on a Products record, Aptify automatically adds an extended product tab to the Products form. For example, when the Publications product type is selected, a Publications tab appears on the Products record. Additionally, extended order detail forms are defined for products with product types of Expos, Meetings, and Housing.

Product Types are configured by administrators.

### **Product Categories**

Product Categories are configured by users and group similar products together. Users can create product hierarchy of categories and sub-categories. Users can also create General Ledger (GL) Accounts that flow down to new products in a category. This enables a simplified product setup.

Aptify's sample database includes several predefined product categories. An organization should create new product categories as necessary based on its particular product/service mix.

# **Creating a New Products Record**

- 1. Select the **Product Maintenance** Application and note the dashboard shortcuts.
- 2. Click the New Products Record button on the dashboard.
- 3. In the Name field, enter XYZ Product (where XYZ are your initials).
- 4. In the Category field, enter Books/Publications. Click Enter.
  - Note that the Publications Type was automatically entered for the user. Aptify will automatically set the type of product as it relates to the category selected.

🖉 New Products F	Record 🗖 🗖 💌
🚽 🔩 🔩 📋 i	👬 🖆 💷 🐎 🗞 🖦 🏪 🎭 🎲 🖛 🔗 🛞 🖕
Name	XYZ Product
<u>Category</u>	Books/Publications A X
Туре	Publication
Parent Product	
Usubscription	Comments       Publications       Attachments         tails       Web       Prices       Hierarchy       Inventory       Assembly       Accounting
Version Number	
DistributionType	Hard Shipment
[	<ul> <li>✓ Top Level Item</li> <li>✓ Currently Sold</li> </ul>
Available On	
Available Until	
Description	

5. Click Save.

#### **GL Accounts Tab**

- 1. Select the Accounting > GL Accounts tab.
  - Notice how six GL Accounts are listed. These accounts flowed down from the Product Category.

#### **Inventory Tab**

- 1. Select the **Inventory** tab.
- 2. In the **Require Inventory** box, place a checkmark.

New Products Record
Name XYZ Product
Category Books/Publications
Type Publication
Parent Product A
Subscription     Comments     Publications     Attachments       General     Details     Web     Prices     Inventory       Assembly     Accounting
Quantity On Hand 0 Quantity Shipped 0
Quantity Reserved 0 Quantity On Order 0
Inventory Ledger       General          Purchases/Adjustments             Purchases/Adjustments
Re-Order Qty.   0   Ave. Lead Time   0     Minimum Stock   0
Notification Employee
Default Inv.Location
Require Inventory
Cost Method Average
Include In Shipping Calc.
Drop Ship
Requires Fulfillment
Allow Backorders

- 3. In the Re-Order Qty field, enter 100.
- 4. In the Minimum Stock field, enter 500.
- 5. Click Save.

# **Understanding Pricing**

Can specify multiple prices to target specific audiences

Member-based pricing

Can specify different prices for members and non-members

• Date-based pricing (Early Bird specials)

Set prices based on Order date

• Group Discounts

Provide discounted prices if customer orders specified number of units or above

• Can Combine multiple pricing features

For example, an early bird special for members only

• Support for prices in Multiple Currencies

The Order Entry System automatically selects the correct price based on membership, order date, and/or order quantity.

#### Pricing Can be set at three different levels:

- Organization
- Employee
- Product

Setting permissions on the **Organization level** gives <u>all</u> of its employees the ability to override the configured price(s), select a price from a list of available prices, or allow the product to be given to a customer/member for free (price = \$0). Organization-level permissions take precedence over the Employee and Product permissions settings. (In other words, once a user has enabled these permissions for the entire organization, all users will have these abilities regardless of the individual Employee and Product settings.)

If a user wants to set permissions on an <u>Employee-by-Employee basis</u>, enable Order Entry **Permissions** only for specific Employees and leave these settings disabled for the Organizations and Products records.

If a user wants to set permissions on a <u>Product-by-Product basis</u>, enable Order Entry **Permissions** only for specific products and leave these settings disabled for the Organizations and Employees records.

A user can also utilize the **Employees and Products** permission sets in conjunction (keep in mind that the <u>Employee setting takes precedence over the Product setting</u>). For example, a user can enable these Permissions on Employees records for managers so they can override the price of any product (while leaving these Permissions disabled for non-managers). Then, a user could enable these permissions for specific products whose prices non-managers can override and leave them disabled for products that non-managers cannot override.

### **Organization Pricing**



### **Employee Pricing**

3 🖦 🗠 🗙	i 📄 👬 🖆 🔄 🦃 🍪 🐜 🧊 🏪 🚱 🔅 🖛 🔗 🛞 🖕
Name	Mr. 🔽 Juan Carlos 🔍
Title	VP, Marketing
Organization	Sampco Association 🔉 🕅 🗙
Supervisor	John Samuels A X
Department	Position Code
2 Comments	Attachments   ttails   🏂 Skills   Personal   🕼 Direct Reports   🐉 Contact Log   🖙 Topic Codes
Web Pa	ge
Referral Ty	pe 🔽
Referred	By 💾 🗙
Linked Pers	ion 🕺 🗙
Pay Ra	ate \$0.00 Bill Rate \$0.00
Date Hir	ed
Date Terminat	ed 🗾
(	Order Entry Permissions  Allow Price Override Allow Related Product Prompt Close Allow Price Selection Allow Free

### **Product Pricing**



# **Adding Prices to a Product**

Each product can support multiple prices based on membership type, order quantity, and/or other order characteristics (such as those identified by a filter rule). Then, when taking an order, Aptify automatically applies correct price based upon the characteristics of the order.

Follow these steps to setup pricing for the product created in Exercise 1:

- 1. On your XYZ Product record, select the Prices tab.
- 2. From the sub-type area, open a new **Prices** record.
  - To do this, on the sub-type toolbar, click the **New Record...** button or right-click in the gray area and select **New** from the pop-up list.
- 3. In the Name field, enter Member.
- 4. In the Price field, enter \$100.00
- 5. From the Member Type drop-down list, select Member (if not already selected).
- 6. From the **Type** drop-down list, select **Base Price**.

Prices Record	
General S Currence	y 🔀 Rounding 🌌 Filter Rule 🍃 Comments
Name	Member
Price	\$100.00 Includes Tax Default
Member Type	Member 💌
	V Include Sub-Member Types
Туре	Base Price % of Base 0
Start Date	End Date
Minimum Quantity	0
Maximum Quantity	0
Pricing Rule	× ≜
Description	
	OK and New OK Cancel

7. Click the OK and New button.

8. Note on the Product record in background, the **Member Price** record appears in the **Prices** tab.

Use Subscription Comments Publications Attachments General Subscription is Accounting Seneral Subscription is Accounting Accounting Accounting								
Pricing Table Settings Advanced								
🖹 🧀 🗙 🛱 Find   🚡 🎓 🦊 💆 🎯								
4	Name	Price	Includes Tax	Member Type	Start Date	End Date	% of Base	Minimum Quantity
	Member	100.00		Member			0	

- 9. In the Name field, enter Non-Member.
- 10. In the **Price** field, enter **\$0.00**.
- 11. From the Member Type drop-down list, select Non-Member (if not already selected).
- 12. From the Type drop-down list, select % of Base Price.
- 13. In the % of Base field, enter 200.

Products ID: 992	2						
🚽 🗞 📲 🚍 🔚 🧞 🎭 🧤 🦏 🎨 ۞ += ⊘ 💿 👔 -							
Name	XYZ Prod	uct					
Category	Books/Pu	ublications				$\mathbb{A}$ $\times$	
Туре	Publicatio	on.				-	
Parent Product						$\mathbb{A}$ $\times$	]
ubscription General ∉ Deta	ils 💽 ۱	ments Public Neb <b>Price</b>	ations Attac	hments   y 🌍 Inve	ntory As	sembly 🖄	Accounting
Pricing Table	Setting	s Advanced	1				
🖹 😂 🗙 🕅	Find	* * * •	<u>}</u>				
Name Name	Price	Includes Tax	Member Type	Start Date	End Date	% of Base	Minimum Qi
Member	100.00		Member			0	
Non-Member	200.00		Non-Member			200	

- 14. Click OK. Click Save.
  - By choosing **Base** price for the Member and **Percent of Base** for the Non-Member the user can control future price changes by only editing the Base Price.

**Important Note: Filter Rules** is an available and valuable tab under a **Prices** record. **Filter Rule** records can be set up to cross reference specific areas/services to set a particular price. For instance, a user could tie a discount to the amount of **Continuing Education Credits** a **Bill To Persons** has or to the number of **Classes** they have taken in a particular year.

# **Creating a Related Product Prompt**

A Related Product is considered to be an additional product that can be seen as an accessory or a cross-sell product. The related product will appear next to the Order form, as a separate window when a user places an order.

For example, if an organization is selling a subscription for magazines, the related product may be a travel bag at a discounted price.

- 1. From the *XYZ* **Product** record, select the **Details** tab.
- 2. Select the Related Products sub-tab.
- 3. Open a new **Related Products** record.
- 4. In the Related Product hyperlink field, enter Financial Planning.
- 5. In the **Product Relationship Type** field, enter Accessory.
- 6. In the Start Date field, enter today's date.
- 7. In the **Prompt Text** field, enter the **Financial Planning Available**.
- 8. In the Web Prompt field, enter the Financial Planning Available.

Related Products Record	
General 🎑 Comments	
Related Product	Financial Planning 🗎 🗙
Product Relationship Type	Accessory 🗎 🗙
	Active
Start Date	2/10/2009
End Date	
	Auto Prompt Operator
Prompt Text	Financial Planning is an accessory to XYZ Product, and it is available for only \$10. Ask the member if he/she is interested in purchasing the product today.
	Veb Prompt
Web Prompt Text	
-	OK Cancel

- 9. Click OK.
  - When a user takes an order for *XYZ* Product later in this class, a pop-up dialog box will appear to inform them that there are related products available.
- 10. Save and Close the XYZ Product record.

# **Inventory Objectives**

Because users checked the **Require Inventory** button under the **Products, Inventory** tab, they will have to set up and understand:

- Creating an Inventory Location
- Creating a Product Inventory Ledger (PIL)
- Creating a Product Inventory Ledger Entry (PILE)

### How Aptify tracks inventory

- Optional on a per-product basis
- Membership Dues usually do not have inventory but can if the number of available memberships is limited
- Inventory stored in multiple warehouses and transferred between as necessary
- Inventory records configured by the organization's Accounting department

#### 3 Services related to Inventory Management:

#### **Inventory Locations (ILs)**

- Inventory Location must be identified first. For physical products, the location is a bin or pallet location in the warehouse.
- For meetings, it would be a block of seats available in the meeting room.

#### **Product Inventory Ledger (PILs)**

- Product Inventory Ledgers must be created next. Each Inventory Location will have a ledger for each product it contains. These Ledgers are used to house the inventory transactions created in the PILES.
- Product inventory ledgers (PIL) are records that track inventory activity for a particular product. Every product must have its own product inventory ledger. Ledgers are only created once at the creation of a product.

#### **Product Inventory Ledger Entries (PILEs)**

Inventory transactions – 4 types

Purchase: for adding new inventory

Transfer: for moving inventory between locations

- Adjustment: for making corrections or for returning inventory
- Batch: Removes shipped units from inventory
- Automatically generated during batching process
- Each PILE is tied to a PIL
- A saved PILE cannot be modified
- Use an Adjustment PILE to make corrections if necessary

# **Creating an Inventory Location**

- 1. Return to the **Product Maintenance** Application.
- 2. On the dashboard, click the New Inventory Location button.
- 3. In the Name field, enter XYZ Warehouse.
- 4. In the Description field, enter Contains XYZ products.
- 5. In the **Organization** field, enter **1**.
- 6. Leave Type set to Bin and Status set to Active.
- 7. In the Max Units field, enter 5000.
- 8. In the Replenish Level field, enter 500.
- 9. In the Replenish Quantity field, enter 500.
- 10. In the Manager field, enter John Samuels (this links to the Employees service).
- 11. Click Save.

New Inventory Locations Record						
🔜 😼 🐴 📄 👬 😭 💷 🥘 🇞 📼 🧦 🧐 🚱 🔅 🖛 🔗 🛞 🖕						
Attachments General M Product Inventory Ledger Products & Inventory Locations						
Name	XYZ Warehouse					
Description						
<u>Organization</u>	XYZ Organization		æ	) ×		
Туре	Bin 💌	Status	Active	-		
Max Units	5000	Weight Units	Pounds	-		
Replenish Level	500	Max Weight	0			
Replenish Quantity	500	Linear Units	Inches	-		
Height	0	Width	0			
Depth	0					
	Allow Direct Fulfillment					
Replenish Source			a <del>r</del>	$\mathbf{x}$		
Manager	John Samuels		æ	$\mathbf{x}$		

# **Creating a Product Inventory Ledger**

A Product Inventory Ledger (PIL) is created to manage and track inventory. Each product for which a user tracks inventory must have a Product Inventory Ledger assigned to it.

- 1. Select the **Product Inventory Ledger** tab on the **Inventory Locations** record created previously.
- 2. Click the New button in the toolbar to open a new Product Inventory Ledger record.
  - Aptify fills in the Inventory Location field automatically since the user opened this record from an Inventory Location record. A user can also open new Product Inventory Ledger records directly from the Product Inventory Ledger service.
- 3. In the **Product** field, enter *XYZ* **Product**.

🕼 Product Inventor	/ Ledger ID: 355	
🛃 🍓 🐴 🗙 📋	) 🖁 🖆 🗐 🦃 😵 🚥 🧊 🦉 🛞 🔅 🕫 🔕	🕐 🕕 💂
Product	XYZ Product	×
Inventory Location	XYZ Organization/XYZ Warehouse	A ×
Comments		
Attachments		
Product Inventory	Ledger Details Product Inventory Ledger Entries	
Quantity On Hand	0	
Quantity Available	0	
Quantity Reserved	0	
Quantity Shipped	0	
Quantity Balance	0	

- 4. Click Save.
  - Note that the Product Inventory Ledger Entries tab is now active.

# **Creating a Product Inventory Ledger Entry**

Users will utilize Product Inventory Ledger Entries (PILEs) to add, transfer, or remove inventory from different locations.

- 1. On the Product Inventory Ledger record created previously, select the **Product Inven**tory Ledger Entries tab.
- 2. Click the **New Record** button and open a new **Product Inventory Ledger Entries** record.
  - Aptify fills in the Product Inv. Ledger field automatically since a user opened this record from a Product Inventory Ledger record. A user can also open new Product Inventory Ledger Entries records directly from the Product Inventory Ledger Entries service.
- 3. In the Description field, enter Add 1000 units.
- 4. In the Quantity field, enter 1000.
- 5. In the Unit Cost field, enter \$20.00.

🙀 New Product Inven	tory Ledger Entries Re	cord		- • ×
🛃 😼 🔩 💼 M	🎽 💷 l 🐌 🗞 l 🏎	। 🚏 🌗 🛞 🛟 🗠	•= 🔗   🔞	0 .
Product Inventory I General 🔬 Produ	edger Entry Transactio	ns Attachments tries		
Product Inv. Ledger	XYZ Product-XYZ Ware	house		A ×
Original PILE				$\mathbb{A}$ $\times$
Description	Add 1000 Units			
Date	10/31/2011	Туре	Purchase	
Quantity	1000			
Unit Cost	\$20.00	Currency Type	<u>US Dollar</u>	A ×
Quantity Balance	0	Entry Qty. Balance	0	

- 6. Click Save.
- 7. Click Close.
- 8. Note the Product Inventory Ledger record, then Save and Close.
- 9. Refresh, then Save and Close the Inventory Locations record.
- 10. Open the XYZ Product record (dashboard, Find Product).
  - A user can access the Products service and their custom views from either the Inventory Management or the Product Setup and Maintenance application.
- 11. Open the record, then select the Inventory tab.

	Name	XYZ Product
	Category	Books/Publications
	Туре	Publication 💌
	Parent Product	A ×
G	Subscription eneral <i> Ə</i> Det	Comments     Publications     Attachments       ails     Web     Prices     Inventory       Accounting
	Quantity On Hu	nd 1000.0000 Quantity Shipped 0.0000
	Quantity Reserv	ed 0.0000 Quantity On Order 0.0000
G	Inventory Leo ieneral 🤌 Dir	dger mensions 🜍 Purchases/Adjustments 🙀 Vendors 💐 On Order
	Re-Orde	r Qty. 0.0000 Ave. Lead Time 0
	Minimum	Stock 0
	Notification Emp	ployee 🛛 🖓 🗙
	Default Inv.Loc	cation 🙈 🗙
		Require Inventory
		Calculate COGS
		Cost Method Average
		Include In Shipping Calc.
		Drop Ship
		Make Internally
		Requires Fulfillment
		Allow Backorders
-		

12. Notice that the Quantity On Hand field reads 1000.

## **General and Prerequisites Subtabs**

Two additional areas that are useful for product configuration are the **General** and **Prerequi**sites subtabs found under the **Details** tab.

### **General Tab**

The **General** tab contains additional information that can be stored, linked, and configured for the product - the most useful of which concerns **Order Lines** generated by purchasing a product.

- 1. Select the **Details** tab.
- 2. The record should default to the General subtab.
- 3. Check the Open Order Line on Add checkbox.
  - Checking this box automatically opens up the Order Line on an Order form when the product is added.
  - Useful feature when additional information is required on an order such as additional shipping info, booth info for an expos sale, registrant info for a class, etc.
- 4. Check the Allow Description Override checkbox.
  - Feature enables users to type over the Product Description that is auto-added when a product is ordered.
  - Useful if particular instructions are needed regarding a particular product on a specific order.

Accounting Subs	cription 🔍 Comments 🛛 Attachments 📄 💽 Web 🍉 Prices 🚛 Hierarchy 🤿 Invent	ory		Assembly
Attributes 🔀 Prere	equisites   9 Products   😭 Topic Codes   💼 Standing Orde	ers	🚢	Part Of 🛛 🖓 Tasks
Торіс				
Code				
Organization	SampcoAssociation	H	×	
Committee		<b>#</b>	$\times$	
Prev. Version		<b>#</b>	$\times$	
Base Product	Sampco Baseball Hat	#	×	
Chapter Assignment Rule				
Order Line Description		<b>a</b>	$\times$	
Order Line Fields				
C	📝 Open Order Line on Add			
	Allow Description Override			

### **Prerequisites Tab**

The **Prerequisites** enables users to set up prerequisites for a product. Clients will only be able to order a product if they meet the prerequisites set up under this tab.

- 1. Select the Prerequisites subtab.
- 2. Check the **Require Prerequisites** checkbox.
- 3. Observe the **Prerequisites Failure Message** and the **Web Prerequisites Failure Mes**sage linked fields.
  - These boxes communicate the exact failure message that will display as a result of a client ordering the product that does **NOT** meet the prerequisites.
  - Failure messages are linked via **Aptify Culture Strings** which are created by **Administrators**. These can easily be created to reflect the desired message.
- 4. Click on the Prerequisites Failure Message link to open a blank record.
- In the Name and Base String fields, enter Purchasee must be from the State of to purchase. (In the blank, fill the state of the Persons record created earlier).
- 6. In the Category field, enter Products.
- 7. Click Save and Close.
- 8. Click in the Service Column under the Filter Rules area.
- 9. From the Service field, select Ship To Person.
- 10. In the Field field, enter State.
- 11. In the Operator field, enter Exactly Matches.
- 12. In the Value field, enter the State from step 5 above.
- 13. Save and Close the Products record.

Accounting Subscription 🔍 Comments Attachments General <b>Details</b> Web brices 📜 Hierarchy 🦪 Inventory 🗐 Assembly									
Finite General Related Products Topic Codes 🔒 Standing Orders 🛔 Part Of 🖓 Tasks Attributes 🕄 Prerequisites									
[	✓ Require Prerequisites								
	Pr	erequisites Failure Message	Purchasee must be from State of Massachusetts to purchase. 🛛 👫 🗙						
W	eb Pr	erequisites Failure Message				$\mathbf{A} \times$			
			Filter Ru	les					
	#	Service	Field	Operator	Value				
Þ	1	Bill To Person	State	Exactly Matches	MA				
*									

# **Creating a Kit Product**

Kits are products that contain two or more products and are sold as a bundle.

Kits often bundle **complementary products** to provide customers with a price discount when compared to the cost of purchasing each product separately. Products in a kit may also be sold individually depending on the top level item setting.

- 1. Return to the **Product Maintenance** dashboard.
- 2. Click the New Product button.
- 3. In the Name field, enter XYZ Kit Product (where XYZ are your initials).
- 4. In the Category field, enter Books/Publications.
  - The **Product Type ID** should be set to **Publications**.
- 5. Click Save.

#### Assembly Tab

- 1. Select the Assembly tab.
- 2. From the **Kit Type** drop-down list (red), select the **Kit Product** type.
- 3. Click the Assembly Using Inventory From Sub-Products checkbox.
  - Notice that the Assembly functionality is now active.
- 4. In the toolbar, click on the New record icon to open a new Parts record.
- 5. In the Sub Product field, enter XYZ Product.
- 6. In the **Quantity** field, enter **1**.
- 7. In the % of Revenue field, enter 75.

Parts Record			
General			
Sub Product	XYZ Product		X
Quantity	1		
% of Revenue	75		
Comments			
		ок	Cancel

8. Click OK.

- 9. Open another new Parts record.
- 10. In the Sub Product field, enter Sampco Baseball Hat.
- 11. In the Quantity field, enter 1.
- 12. In the % of Revenue field, enter 25.
- 13. Click OK.

A New Products Record						, • 💌			
😸 😼 🔩 💼 🕅 😭 🗉	🔜 🍕 📲 🚔 🖆 💷 🥘 🔇 🚥 🥞 🎭 🚱 🎲 🕶 🔗 🕕 🕛								
Name XYZ Kit Product									
Category Books/P	ublications				X				
Type Publicati	on			•					
Parent Product					$\mathbf{A}$ $\times$				
👢 Subscription 🍃 Com	ments Public	ations At	ttachments						
General 🍠 Details 💽	Web 🍃 Prices	E Hiera	archy 🎯 Inventor	Assem	bly 痰	Accounting			
Kit Type Kit Product						-			
🔽 Assemble usin	g Inventory fron	n Sub-Produ	cts						
🛅 💕 🗙 🖁 🎆 Find 🛛	<u>•</u> • • <u>•</u>	0							
Sub Product	Quantity % o	f Revenue	Comments						
XYZ Product	1	75							
Sampco Baseball Hat	1	25							

14. Click Save.

#### **Prices Tab**

- 1. Select the **Prices** tab.
- 2. Click the New Record button.
- 3. Add a Member Price of \$105 for each kit.
- 4. Click the **OK and New** button.
- 5. Add a Non-Member Price of \$210 for each kit. Mark this price as the default.
- 6. Click Save and Close.

### **Product Grouping**

- · Easy way to add multiple products to an order in one operation
- Setup like a Kit product
- Group itself is not added to an order
- Only the individual products in the group
- Products added by group can be removed from order w/out affecting other products.

# Chapter 10



# **Order Entry**

Objective	10.1
Types of Orders	10.2
Ordering a Product	10.3
Creating a Multi-Line Order	10.7
Creating a Quotation	10.9
Ordering a Product w/Related Product Prompt	10.10
Ordering a Kit Product	10.11
Processing a Price Adjustment	10.12
Making a Partial Payment for an Order	10.13
Paying with a Purchase Order	10.14
Marking Orders As Shipped	10.16
Canceling an Order with the Order Cancellation Wizard	10.17

# Objective

Within Aptify, once products, inventory, and prices have been established, an organization's employees can take orders from customers and/or members. In this chapter, users will have the opportunity to work with the Aptify Order Entry system. This includes:

- Types of Orders
- Taking Orders
- Shipping Orders
- Creating a Back Order
- Canceling an Order

# **Types of Orders**

The Aptify Order Entry system enables organizations to process any type of transaction within one module. A single order can combine different types of transactions. For example, a service representative could process a new membership, register that individual for a meeting, and sell a book all in one transaction with one invoice.

**In Aptify, all income-generating items are classified as products,** including booth space at expos, meeting registrations, subscriptions and membership dues. Aptify has developed a sophisticated method of tracking the extended information associated with these complex transactions within the Product Service/Order Entry system. Unlike some generic products that encourage workarounds to handle these types of transactions through a centralized Order Entry system, Aptify was designed to handle all transactions.

The Aptify Order Entry system provides full-feature order and payment processing. The Order Entry system has the following features and capabilities:

- Orders can be placed for multiple and diverse products on the same invoice.
- Orders and Payments records <u>automatically pull address information</u> from customer records for shipping and billing addresses saving order processing time.
- <u>Pricing information is automatically pulled from a Products record</u>. Each
  product can be configured to have multiple pricing options, which can be associated with different marketing campaigns/member/customer types. The Order
  Entry system has logic that automatically selects the best price each customer or
  member is eligible for, and enables price overrides with appropriate permissions.
- Income from certain items, such as membership dues and subscription orders, is
  earned over time and therefore should not be entirely recognized at the time of
  the order. To accommodate this, <u>Aptify has a deferred income option</u> that can
  automatically generate scheduled transactions over a given time period to recognize the income as it is earned.
- The Order Entry system **<u>automatically creates back orders</u>** for products that are not currently in stock. The shipping status for regular and back-ordered items is maintained separately so that partial orders can be shipped and invoiced.

# **Ordering a Product**

This section gives users the hands-on knowledge and experience of ordering a product and viewing the decrease in inventory. <u>Normally, Orders would be done using a user's</u> <u>companies E-Business web site OR by using a wizard</u> - see the next exercise. An Order would <u>NOT</u> normally be created by using a Persons record - users are doing so in this exercise to see features - such as advanced addressing - that would not be accessible via the web site/wizard.

- 1. Open the **Persons** record.
- 2. Select the **Orders** tab.
- 3. In the toolbar, click the New Record button to open a new orders record.
  - New Orders record displays: Aptify automatically fills in fields, including:
    - The **Ship To** information (Name, Company, Address, etc.) since the form was opened from a Persons record.
    - The **Date** field with today's date.

New Orders Re	New Orders Record								
🛃 😼 🔩 💼	🛃 🗞 🐁 (🕋 🚔 💷 ) 🐎 🗞 (==) 🦆 🎭 🚱 🎲 (== 🄗 ) 🛞 🕘 🖕								
Order Entry - O'C	Or <u>der Entry - O'Connell, Dave/Aptify</u>								
🐝 <u>C</u> ustomer 🔮	🖥 Shipping 🙍 Accounting 肉 Ca <u>n</u> ce	llations	3	Su <u>b</u> s	criptions 🎽 🎽 <u>M</u>	essages 🖉 A <u>t</u> tachments			
Order Date	10/31/2011			(	Order Addresses				
Ship To	O'Connell, Dave/Aptify	A ×		351 -		√ Ship To Address			
Ship To Company	Aptify	AA 🗙			Line 1	25 Forest Avenue			
	Billing Same as Shipping				Line 2				
Bill To	O'Connell, Dave/Aptify	$\mathbb{A}$	5		Line 3				
Bill To Company	Aptify	$\mathbb{A}$			City, State ZIP	Fairfax			
	Customer Type:				County	Fairfax			
Non-Member/Non-Member					Country	United States			
<u>Campaign</u>		$\mathbb{A}$				√ Ship To Phone			
Ship Type	U.S. Mail		-						

- Note that the same address information that was added to the Ship To section is also added to the Bill To section. To specify different Bill To information,
- 4. Remove the check mark from the Billing Same As Shipping box.

- 5. To the right of the Ship To field, click the Addresses button (record center).
  - This button is circled in the following figure.
  - Clicking this button displays a drop-down list that contains all of the addresses associated with the Person and the Company (including the addresses found on the Addresses tab).
- 6. Select <u>Ship To</u> Person Addresses > to use the address added to the record's Addresses tab in the previous *Companies & Persons* exercise.
- 7. Of the choices, select Home.
  - Note: Ship To address information changes to the Home address.

New Orders Re	cord								×
🛃 🔩 🔩 💼 i	M 📬 🗉 🐚 🗞 📼 🦌 🌚	े । 🕶 🖉	0	Ŧ					
Order Entry - O'C	onnell, Dave/Aptify								×
🐝 <u>C</u> ustomer 💐	<u>Shipping</u> Accounting 😽 Ca <u>n</u> ce	lations 🛃	Subscrip	tions 🎽 🎽 M	lessages 🖉 Atta	chments			
Order Date Ship To Ship To Compare Bill To Company	10/31/2011	A× A×		Ship To Per Ship To Cor Bill To Perso Bill To Corr	Ship To Address son Addresses mpany Addresses on Address npany Addresses	S	Work Home	<ul> <li>22102</li> </ul>	
<u>Campaign</u> Ship Type Order Source	Customer Type: Non-Member/Non-Member U.S. Mail Walk-In	× •		County Country	Fairfax       United States       ✓ Ship To Phone       1     571       421-82	60 >	×		

- 8. From the **Billing Same as Shipping** box, remove the check mark.
- 9. In the **<u>Bill To</u>** field, the person and Bill To Company then populates automatically.
- On the <u>right</u> side of the order, under Order Addresses, use the address drop-down list to switch from the Ship To Address to the Bill to Address. Note that the Bill To Address still uses the original address (note when toggling between the Ship To Address and Bill To Address using the address drop-down list).
- 11. Next to the Ship To field, click the Addresses button, and from the pop-up list, select **Person** > Vacation Address.
  - The Bill To address is updated to use the vacation address entered previously.
- 12. From the drop-down list items, click between the **Bill To** and the **Ship To**.
  - Notice that there are now specified different Bill To and Ship To addresses.
- 13. In the Find Products field, Enter your XYZ Product, and click the Tab key.
- 14. In the Quantity field, Enter 1.
- 15. Click the Add button (right of Quantity).
  - An Order line is added to the form for 1 unit of the **XYZ Product**.

Lines						3
Find Product		M X Quantity	1 Add			×
line True mot	uct ID Product De	escription	Quantity	Price Di	scount Extended	
1	9922 XYZ Product		1	\$200.00	0 \$	\$200.0
Summary						2
Order Type	Regular Vorder	Status Taken	Ship Partia	Order Totals		_
	-			Sub-Total	\$200.00	D
Payment Type	Purchase Order	<ul> <li>Initial Payment Amount</li> </ul>	\$200.0	0 Shipping	\$0.00	
PO #		Cash Control	<b>**</b> >	Handling	\$0.00	
Terms		Payment Schedule Type	None	• Tay	ć0.00	
Due Date		Currency Type	US Dollar		\$0.00	
Due Date		Codes and	Pagular	- Total	\$200.00	D
		OrderLevel	Regulai	Balance	\$200.00	D

- 16. <u>To delete an order</u>: Highlight Order Line 1 (as shown in Figure 10.3) and click the **Delete** key. Click **Yes** to confirm the deletion of the order line.
- 17. In the Find Products field, enter XYZ Product and click the Tab key.
- 18. In the Quantity field, enter 2 and click Add, which initiates the actual order.
  - An order line for 2 units is added to the Order at \$200 each for a total of \$400.
  - The related product prompt appears to the right of the form.
- 19. In the Price field, click the 200.00 to display an ellipsis (...) button.
- 20. Click the ellipsis button and review the available prices for this product.
  - Note that this person is charged \$200 since this person's Member Type is Non-Member. The Member Type is also reported below the Order Level field on the Order form. It should read **Non-Member**.
- 21. From the drop-down list, select 100 (the member price).
- 22. When prompted if a user is overriding the automatic price, click Yes.
  - The price updates to \$100/unit and the Order Total changes to \$200.

	m	V Quantity					
Line Type Product ID Produ	uct Descri	ption	Quantity	Price	Discount	Extended	
1 🔞 9922 XYZ P	roduct			1 \$200.0	0 0		\$200.0
							-
mary							
, a la ma Province		Talaa		Order Tot	als		
Order Type Regular	▼ Order Stat	us Taken	Ship Pa	sub-1	otal	\$200.0	0
Payment Type Vica	- \$ -	Initial Payment Amount	\$2	00.00		+0.00	
Payment Type Visa			42	Ship	ping	\$0.00	
CC Account # 1234567890	1234	Cash Control	a de la companya de l	Han Han	dling	\$0.00	1
CC Exp Date 1/24/20XX	CSC	Payment Schedule Type	lone	-	Tax	\$0.00	
Auth Code		Currency Type	IS Dollar	<b>_</b>			
Addreooc			in evilen		fotal	\$200.01	0
CC Auth Type NA	<b>_</b>	Order Level R	egular	Bal	ance	\$200.0	0
🔲 Save for	Future Use						

23. Select the **Payment** Type drop-down.

- 24. From the Pay Type drop-down list, select Visa.
- 25. In the CC Account # field, enter 4123 4567 8901 2345 (any 16 digits beginning with 4).
- 26. In the CC Exp. Date field, enter a date two years from today's date.

**Note:** On the training server, users can enter any value in the Acct # field since it is not configured to validate credit card numbers through Paypal. On a Live system, users would only use valid credit card numbers provided by a customer/member.

27. Check the **Save for Future Use** checkbox(towards bottom right); this enables users to reuse the CC on subsequent orders for this Person without having to re-type.

**Note:** This function must be enabled per payment type under the Order Entry Administration application, Saved Payment Types service.

- 28. Click the Save button.
- 29. The system prompts users that this order can be shipped because all of the products on the order have:
  - The **Requires Fulfillment** box cleared (this box is on the product form's Inventory tab)
  - The product has available inventory (**Requires Inventory** box is checked and this product is stocked in the warehouse).
- 30. On the order prompt screen asking if the user wants to have the item shipped, click **No.** (Later, in another exercise, this order will be manually shipped).
- 31. Close the **Orders** record.

# **Creating a Multi-Line Order**

In this exercise users will enter an Order using the **New Order Wizard**. The New Order Wizard should be the standard method for end users to enter a customer request handled over the phone or in person. It is the quickest/most efficient way to handle a standard order. It is important to note that ANY order processed using the wizard will only be given a status of **Taken**. Users will have to mark orders as **Shipped** in a separate function.

- 1. Click on the Order Entry application to open the dashboard.
- 2. Click on the New Order Wizard button.
- 3. In the Ship To field, enter your Persons name and click Tab.
- 4. Click the Next button.

Rew Order Wizard					- • ×
	Order Date 12/28/2013	Order Type Re	gular 💌	Order Source Walk-In	
Specify Customer Info Add Products Enter Initial Payment	Ship To Baldwin, Ales Ship To Company Danube Partn Ship To Company US Dollar Currency Type US Dollar Order Address Line Line Line City, State Z Cour Cour	AdDanube Partners	Bill To Company Bill To Company CA v 94	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners Danube Partners Customer Type: Corporate Member/Non-Member	
Help		Cancel Back	Next		Finish

- 5. In the Find Product box, enter 16 and click Tab.
- 6. Click the Add button.
  - The system will add the 16 oz. shot glass to your order.
- 7. In the Find Product box, Enter Arm and click the Tab key (arm chair fills in).
- 8. Click the Add button.
  - The system will add the Arm Chair product to your order.

9. Click the **Next** button.

2 New Order Wizard		-	and the second					x
	Customer Type: Corporate Membr	er/Non-Member						
	Find Product		A X Quantity	1 Add			ſ	×
	Line Type Pr	roduct ID Product	Description	Quantity	Price	Discount	Extended	
	1 📶	33 16oz Sampco Glass	16oz Sampco Glass	1	\$16.00	0		\$16.00
	2 📈	48 Arm Chair	Arm Chair	1	\$250.00	0		\$250.00
Add Products     Enter Initial Payment	Campaign				Order Totals			
	Ship Type	IIS Mail			Sub-Total		\$266.00	
	Sub Abe	0.5. Mail			Shipping		\$0.00	
					Handling		\$0.00	<b>(i)</b>
					Tax		\$0.00	1
					Total		\$266.00	
				•				
Неір		Cano	Zei Back Nex	a			Fi	nisn

- 10. Select the Saved Payments icon next to the Payments Type drop-down.
- 11. Float the cursor over the Persons selection.
- 12. Click to select the **Credit Card** information that displays to the right. Note the information autofills.
- 13. Click **Finish** to place the order.
  - Note that a user is not prompted that this order qualifies for auto-shipment since both products have the Requires Fulfillment box checked on their respective Products records.

New Order Wizard	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	Payment Type Visa Total \$266.00	
	CC Account # Persons    SPM 12/28/2013 (Visa: 2xxxxxxxxx432)	
	CC Exp Date CSC Companies Control	
	Auth Code Payment Schedule Type None	
	CC Auth Type NA 🔹 Order Level Regular	
	Save for Future Use Suppress Confirmation Emails	
Specify Customer Info		
Enter Initial Payment		
Help	Cancel Back Next	Finish

14. Click **Yes** to create another **Order**.

# **Creating a Quotation**

At times, members will call to find out a **Quote** without purchasing the product. Aptify allows end users to create quotations.

1. From the **Order Type** drop-down list, select **Quotation**. Change **Order Source** to **Phone**.

I	Part 2 New Order Wizard							
		Order Date	12/30/2013		Order Type	Quotatio	n	-
						ID	Name	
		Ship To	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danu	be Partners		4	Quotation	
		Ship To Company	Danube Partners		<b>a A</b>	1	Regulat	45
			👿 Billing Same as Shi	ipping				0
		Currency Type	US Dollar			-		
	Specify Customer Info	) 🚉 <del>-</del>	Order Addresses					_

- 2. In the Ship To field, enter the persons name. Click Tab to auto-fill. Click the Next button
- 3. To the Order Line, add your XYZ Product.
- 4. Click the Next button. Click Finish quotations do not require payment information.
- 5. Click No to create another Order.
- 6. Click on the My Orders Today shortcut (Under the Orders Shortcut Group).

Orders Quotations													
🖹 🧀 🗙 🛄 🕍 Harports 🕌 📲 Add To List 🖄 😤 🍒 🛝 🧠 👼 🖾 🛒 🗟													
Quotations for Dave O'Connell													
	ID	Order Date	Line1_ProductName	Grand Total	Balance	Order Status							
	9863	10/31/2011	XYZ Product	\$200.00	\$200.00	Taken							

- 7. Double-click on the Quotation entry created above to open the Orders record.
- 8. Change the Order Type from Quotation to Regular.
- 9. Select the Saved Payments icon next to the Payments Type drop-down.
- 10. Float the cursor over the Persons selection.
- 11. Select the Credit Card information that displays to the right.
- 12. Click Save.
- 13. Change the Order Status from Taken to Shipped.
- 14. Click **Yes** to indicate that all items in the order have been shipped.
- 15. Click Save and Close.
- 16. Click the **Refresh** button on the **My Orders Today** view.
- 17. The Quotation is changed to a Regular Order.

# **Ordering a Product w/Related Product Prompt**

- 1. Click on the New Order Wizard (Order Entry Dashboard).
- 2. In the Ship To's Name field, enter 1 and click the Tab key.
  - Information from the Aiesha Baldwin record (who is Person ID 1) automatically populates the Name, Company, and Address field on the Ship To and Bill To sections.
- 3. Click Next.
- 4. Create an order line for the *XYZ* **Product**. User should try to do this on their own. Otherwise, follow these steps:
  - In the **Find Product** field, enter *XYZ* **Product** and click the **Tab** key.
  - In the **Quantity** field, enter **1**.
  - Click the **Add** button.
- 5. Notice that the **Related Product Prompt** configured in the previous exercise now appears to the right of the Wizard. Drag the prompt to the center of the screen.

Related Products: XYZ Product (3504)											
	Product		Product	Relationship Type	Comments						
+	4		Financial Planning	Accessory	Financial Planning is an accessory to XYZ Product, and it is available for only \$10. Ask the member if he/she is interested in purchasing the product today.						

- Users may receive an error message if attempting to close the Related Product Prompt. An **Allow Related Product Prompt Close** option on the Employees form's Details tab can be enabled in order to allow users to close this pop-up.
- 6. Double-click the plus (+) sign in the column on the far left of the dialog to automatically add one unit of the Financial Planning product to the order.
- 7. Click the Next button.
- 8. Next to the Payments Type drop-down, select the Saved Payments icon.
- 9. Float the cursor over the **Persons** selection.
- 10. Select the Credit Card information that displays to the right.
- 11. Click Finish.
- 12. Click OK.
- 13. Click Yes to create another Order.
### **Ordering a Kit Product**

- 1. Enter your **Persons** info for the address info.
- 2. Click the Next button.
- 3. Create an order line for 1 unit of your XYZ Kit Product.
  - The price of the order is the kit price and not the sum of the individual products.
- 4. To the right of the Add button, click on the Expand checkbox to see the components.

	the first		Res-Topment	Sec. Ba		-	-	
Customer Type: Corporate Member/Non-Men <u>Find Product</u>	nber	X	Quantity 1 A	<u>d</u> d			Expand K	its
Line Type Product ID P	Product	Description		Quantity	Price		Discount	Extended
1 👸 9923 🗴	(YZ Kit Product			1	1	\$105.00	0	

5. The components of the Kit product display.

luct							
Find Product         MX         Quantity         1         Add         Image: Constraint of the second							s
pe Product	Product	Description		Quantity	Price	Discount	Extended
3506	XYZ Kit Product			1	\$50.00	0	\$50.00
3504	XYZ Product			1.0000	\$0.00	0	\$0.00
42	Sampco Baseball Hat	Sampco Baseball Hat		1.0000	\$0.00	0	\$0.00
oe	Product 3506 3504 42	Product         Product           3506         XYZ Kit Product           3504         XYZ Product           42         Sampco Baseball Hat	Product         Product         Description           3506         XYZ Kit Product         3504         XYZ Product           42         Sampco Baseball Hat         Sampco Baseball Hat	Product         Product         Description           3506         XYZ Kit Product         3504         XYZ Product           42         Sampco Baseball Hat         Sampco Baseball Hat         Sampco Baseball Hat	Product         Product         Description         Quantity           3506         XYZ Kit Product         1         1           3504         XYZ Product         1.0000         1.0000           42         Sampco Baseball Hat         Sampco Baseball Hat         1.0000	Product         Product         Description         Quantity         Price           3506         XYZ Kit Product         1         \$50.00           3504         XYZ Product         1.0000         \$0.00           42         Sampco Baseball Hat         Sampco Baseball Hat         1.0000         \$0.00	Product         Product         Description         Quantity         Price         Discount           3506         XYZ Kit Product         1         \$50.00         0           3504         XYZ Product         1.0000         \$0.00         0           42         Sampco Baseball Hat         Sampco Baseball Hat         1.0000         \$0.00

- 6. Click the Next button.
- 7. Next to the Payments Type drop-down, select the Saved Payments icon.
- 8. Float the cursor over the **Persons** selection.
- 9. Select the Credit Card information that displays to the right.
- 10. Click Finish.
- 11. Click Yes to create another Order.

### **Processing a Price Adjustment**

Aptify allows users to make price adjustments to an order. This ability will override any prices that are set in the system. This assumes that the Order Entry Permissions for the Organization, Employee, or Order allow users to override prices.

- 1. Create an order for 10 units of your *XYZ* Product.
  - The Order line uses a price of \$50 per unit, which is the Group Member price you created for the product.
- 2. Click in the **Price** field to display an ellipsis button.
- 3. In the price field, double-click to edit the price.
- 4. Enter **60** in the Price field.
- 5. Click out of the Price field and select Yes when the price override prompt appears.
  - The price changes to \$60/unit on the Order line and the Order Total updates to \$600.

Taken B	y Dave O	Connell	<b>₩</b> ×	Country	United Kingd	m			-			
Sales Re	£		¥×		Aptify (	Irder E	intry					
Campaig	<u>n</u>		×		1	Yo cal Th ord	u have selec culated price e system wil der line. Do y	tted a pi e. Il no loni you wish	rice differe ger calculat n to procee	nt from the te pricing fo d?	system or this	
Lines								Г	Vee		Nie	
Find Product			$\times$	Quantity	1			_	res		NU	1
Line Type I	Product	Product	Description	ו	Quantit	Y	Price		Discount	Extended		
1 🎁	3504	XYZ Product				10	\$60.	.00	C	1	\$50	0.00

### Making a Partial Payment for an Order

In some cases, a customer/member may make only a down payment at the time the order is taken.

- 1. Click on the New Order Wizard (Order Entry Dashboard).
- 2. Create an order line for 1 unit of your XYZ Product.
- 3. Select the Saved Payments icon next to the Payments Type drop-down.
- 4. Float the cursor over the **Persons** selection.
- 5. Select the Credit Card information that displays to the right.
- 6. Change the Initial Payment Amount from \$200.00 to \$100.00.

Payment Type	Visa	<b>-</b> S <b>-</b>	Total	\$200.00	
CC Account #	3432434324324		Initial Payment Amount	\$100.00	
CC Exp Date	12/30/2015 C	sc	Cash Control	$\mathbf{A} \times$	
Auth Code			Payment Schedule Type	None 💌	
CC Auth Type	NA	-	Order Level	Regular 🗨	
	Save for Future Use			Suppress Confirmation	n Emails

- 7. Click Finish.
- 8. Users can process additional **Payments** by using the **New Payment** button on the **Order Entry** dashboard.

## Paying with a Purchase Order

- 1. Open a new Order.
- 2. Create an order line for **3** units of your *XYZ* **Product**.
- 3. Double-click the far left, non-editable field in the order line to open the **Order Line Details** window.

	Lines									
	Find Product									
		Line	Туре	Product	Product					
(		1	1	3504	XYZ Product					

- 4. Change the **Quantity** from **3** to **5**.
- 5. In the **Discount** field, enter **25**.
  - This will apply a 25% discount to the order line.

Order Lines Record	
General Ship To 🎑 Co	omments
Quantity	5 Price \$100.00 Discount 25
Inventory Location	XYZ Organization/XYZ Warehouse - Aisle 44 Shelf B 🛛 🕅 🗙
	Not Returned To Stock
Campaign Code	M ×
<u>Chapter</u>	M ×
Description	

• Notice that the Quantity, Price, and Discount fields have been updated based on the changes made in the Order Line Detail window.

- 7. Select the Customer tab (if not already open).
- 8. Click the Ship To Company link to open the *XYZ* Company record.
- 9. Select the **Details** >>**Organization** tab on the *XYZ* Company record.
- 10. Confirm that the Credit Status is set to Approved and the Credit Limit is set to \$10,000.00.
  - Only Companies or Persons that have Credit Status set to Approved and a Credit Limit that is greater than the Order Total can use a Purchase Order to place an order.
- 11. Close the XYZ Company record.
- 12. Set the Payment Type to Purchase Order under the Order's Payment heading.
- 13. Enter **23** as the **PO** #.
- 14. Click Save and click No when asked if the user wants to ship the order.

## **Marking Orders As Shipped**

Once the products in an order have been shipped to a customer/member, users will need to change the Order Status from **Taken** to **Shipped**. For accounting purposes, General Ledger (GL) entries are created once an order is marked as shipped.

A user can manually open each Orders record and change the Order Status to Shipped (as done for the Order in Exercise 3) or a user can use the Marked As Shipped function (described in this exercise).

- 1. Observe the Orders Over the Last 30 Days view on the Order Entry dashboard.
- 2. All Orders should have a Taken By status.

Or	der En	try (	Dashboar	d					_	_			
Bu	Button Bar												
	Nev	/ Ore	ler Wizar	d Ord	er Cancellation	Find Payn	nent	New Payment		Refun	d Wizard	Shipping Dashboard	
÷			💕 🕻	X 4	Reports 🕅	📲 Add To L	ist 📳 💁 🗄	💲 🔝 Prev	iew 🛛 🤷		5 🗟 🗹 🎗	a 🏭 😫	
Ŧ	ays		ID	Date	Ship To C	ompany	Ship To Name	Order Type	Total	Balance		Status	
F	100		10091	12/28/2013	Danube Partners		Aiesha Baldwin	Regular	19.95	0.00	Taken		
¢	ast		10092	12/30/2013	Danube Partners		Aiesha Baldwin	Quotation	12.00	12.00	Taken		
	Je L		10093	12/30/2013	Akebono Cryogen	ics Incorporated	Athena Scott	Regular	200.00	100.00	Taken		
d	Orders Over th												

- 3. Click to select **all** entries in the view.
- 4. *Right click* anywhere in the view and select **Order Options** > **Marked as Shipped**.

-											
4	ID	Date	Ship To C	ompany		Ship To Name	Order Type	Total	Balance		Status
	1	New Person		Chill N	1	Aiesha Baldwin	Regular	19.95	0.00	Taken	
	1	New Record	a	Cui+iv		<u>Aiesha Baldwin</u>	Quotation	12.00	12.00	Taken	
	1	Open Reco	ord	Ctrl+0	ed	Athena Scott	Regular	200.00	100.00	Taken	
		Delete		Del							
<		Orders Options		۰		Mark as Ship	ped D		>		
		Add to List		Ctrl+A		Create Back (	Veleran				
		Add to Elst		Carra		C	- 11				
		Report Wizard		Ctrl+R		Create Order					

- 5. All Orders that qualify will now be marked as Shipped.
  - Orders in a **quoted** status will not be shipped; only orders that have a payment associated with them can be shipped.
  - This function is generally reserved/accessible for users who will be doing the actual packaging/shipping of the product. This function is also applicable to virtual products that not need to be packaged, but do need approval to be shipped
- 6. Refresh the View and confirm that the Order Status is Shipped for the Orders.

# Canceling an Order with the Order Cancellation Wizard

In this exercise, users will cancel one of the XYZ Product Orders from a previous exercise.

- 1. In the View of Orders over the Last 30 Days, select the first order listed.
- 2. Click the Order Cancellation button on the dashboard.d

Orde	er Ent	ry D	ashboar	d							
Butt	ton B	ar									
	New Order Wizard Order Cancellation Find Payment										
+		B	<u>2</u>	I X 🗔	🚹 Reports 🕌 📲 Add To	List 🕙					
day	ays		ID	Date	Ship To Company	Ship To I					
Ę	8		10091	12/28/2013	Danube Partners	Aiesha Ba					
S	ast		10092	12/30/2013	Danube Partners	Aiesha Ba					
ncts	S p 10093 12/30/2013 Akebono Cryogenics Incorporated										
rod	ert										

- 3. Review the welcome screen and click Next.
- 4. In the **Order** field, enter the first order number.
- 5. From the Cancellation Reason drop-down list, select Incorrect Product.
  - Employee should populate automatically based on your user's Employees record.l

🗡 Aptify Order Cancellati	ion Wizard	
	<b>Step 1: Specify an Order</b> Please specify the order which you would like to cancel. Also, ensure that I employee is correctly entered.	the value for
	Taken By Dave O'Connell	× K
	Order 9860	¥ X
	Cancellation Reason Incorrect Product	

- 6. Click Next to continue.
- 7. Place a check mark next to the **XYZ Product** order line to indicate that both units are being returned.

🗡 Aptify Order Cancellatio	on Wizard			<u>_</u> _×
	<b>Step 2: Sp</b> Please spe To see ord	ecify Order Lines cify one or more lines to cancel. Also, indic ler line details, click in the Product column.	ate the quantity (	which should be cancelled. heck All Check None
	Line	Product	Quantity	Cancel Quantity
		XYZ Product	2.0000	2.0000
	2	Sampco T-Shirt	4.0000	0
	Retu	rn Shipping Charge ude Cancellation Fee Product		<u>च</u>
			-	
		Cancel Back Next		Finish

- 8. Click Next to continue.
- 9. Using the wizard, a user can either keep credits that result from a cancellation on account to apply against future orders (as a Credit Memo) or a user can refund the amount. In this case, select **Refund**.
  - The Refund Amount is automatically calculated to equal the Cancelled Amount. A user can specify a lower refund amount but not a greater one (the Refund Amount must be equal to or less than the Cancelled Amount).

🗡 Aptify Order Cancellati	on Wizard	
	Step 3: Refund or Credit Would you like the resulting credit to be refunded to the customer or retained on if the first payment toward this order was a check will this wizard allow a check to refund. Balance © Keep On Account © Refund	account? Only be issued as a
	Cancel Back Next	Finish

- 10. Click **Next** to continue.
- 11. Click Finish to generate the cancellation order.
- 12. When prompted, click Yes to open the cancellation order and review its details.
  - Notice that the quantity of the order line is negative.
  - Notice that the order total is a credit amount.
  - Notice that the cancellation order is linked to the original order (via the **Original Order** field) and the **Order Type** is **Cancellation**.
  - Notice that the payment is a refund amount equal to the cancellation order total. The original order was paid via credit card and the system automatically generated the refund payment to the same CC account.

Figure 10.1	🗟 🗞 🗞 🗙 🛛	🖹 👗 📬 🗉 🐎 🗞 🖦 🍟	🖥 🔞 🗘	🔹 🖗	0 🕕 📮					
Order	Order Entry - Aar	onson, Edward/Danube Partners								×
	够 <u>C</u> ustomer 🞈	<u>S</u> hipping 🗟 <u>A</u> ccounting 🇞 Ca	ncellations	Su <u>t</u>	scriptions	<u>M</u> essage	s 🛛 🖉 A <u>t</u> tachme	ents		
	Order Date	11/28/2011			Order Address	es				
	Ship To	Aaronson, Edward/Danube Partners	a ×	80 v		√ Sh	ip To Address	-	14 🔉 🖂 🔇 🖴	
	Ship To Company	Danube Partners	A ×		Line	910 50	outhwest Union A	venue		
	[	Billing Same as Shipping		_	Line	2				
	<u>Bill To</u>	Aaronson, Edward/Danube Partners	M ×		Line	3				_
	Bill To Company	Danube Partners	A ×		City, State Z	IP Palo A	lto	CA	94301	_
		Customer Type: Corporate Member/Non-Member			Cour	ity Santa	Clara d States			_
	Campaign		$\mathbf{A} \times$	1	Coun	ry United	Jolates			
	Ship Type	U.S. Mail	-			√ Shi	ip To Phone			
	Order Source	Walk-In	-			1 6	50 750-9187	x		
	Lizza									
	Find Product		44	× Quar	tity	Ado	1		5	
		duct ID Product De	scription		,		Quant	ity Price	Discount Extended	<u> </u>
	1	3507 XYZ Product					Ċ	-1.0000 \$100.0	0 0 (\$1	100.00)
	Summary									×
	Order Typ		Order Statu	s Taken			Shin Partial	Order Totals		
							Subrara	Sub-Total	(\$100.00)	
	Payment Type	e Purchase Order 💌	S <del>-</del>	Initial Pa	yment Amount		(\$100.00)	Shipping	\$0.00	1
	PO #	t N/a			Cash Control		AA X	Handling	\$0.00	1
	Terms	5		Payment	Schedule Type	None		Tax	\$0.00	<b>i</b> )
	Due Date	e			Currency Type	US Dollar		Total	(\$100.00)	
					Order Level	Regular	•	Balance	(\$100.00)	

13. Change the Order Status to Shipped and save the order.

- A user need to SHIP cancellation orders for three main reasons:
  - Enable Inventory control to inspect the returned product.
  - Credit the customers account if product satisfactorily returned.
  - Generate GL entries that counter balance the original order's GL entries
- 14. Close the cancellation order.
- 15. Click No when prompted to cancel another order.

# Chapter 11



# Payments

Objective	.1
Making a Payment 11.	.2
Multiple Payments to An Order 11.	.3
A Single Payment to Multiple Orders 11.	.6
Apply a Single Payment to Multiple Order Lines 11.	.8
Over Payments	.10

# Objective

In this chapter, users will apply payments towards existing orders. The objective of this section is to demonstrate the multiple ways of applying payments.

### **Payments Overview**

#### Payments are taken at the time of the order

- Using the Summary area
- All orders require an initial payment or Purchase Order number with approved credit before it can be saved
- System automatically creates a Payments record based on this information

#### Users can use the Payments service to create additional payments

- When a customer pays off a purchase order
- When a customer, who made an initial payment, pays off an entire balance
- When a customer who made an initial payment pays periodic installments to cover remaining balance

### Making a Payment

#### Summary Area on an Order Record

Order Type	Regular 💌	Order Status	Taken	▼ Ship Partial	Order Totals Sub-Total	\$0.00	
Payment Type	Pre-Paid Check	• (\$) •	Initial Payment Amount [	\$0.00	Shipping	\$0.00	1
Check Number			Cash Control	×	Handling	\$0.00	1
Bank			Payment Schedule Type	None 👻	Tax	\$0.00	1
Account Number			Currency Type	US Dollar 💌	Total	\$0.00	
Branch Name			Order Level	Regular 💌	Balance	\$0.00	
ABA							

Users should access the **Summary** area to record any payment at the time of the order.

Users should open a separate **Payments** Record (from the **Payments** service) to record an installment payment or balance payoff.

#### **Payments Record**



When a user takes an order with a payment on it, the system automatically generates this record.

Payment Lines - reflect payment made to the order. Automatically assumes full payment.

If not full payment, the user can double click on the item and change the information.

If a user knows what the order the payment is for, they can use the accounting tab of that order to generate this form.

## **Multiple Payments to An Order**

- 1. Order an XYZ Product from your Persons' record Orders tab.
- 2. In the Summary area, enter the payment type.
- 3. In the **Initial Payment Amount** field, enter in half of the total amount that is due for the order (as illustrated in Figure 11.1).
  - Note that a user cannot enter a partial payment using a Purchase Order payment type, as a purchase order is a promise to pay the full amount.

Summary							
Order Type	Regular Order Status T	Faken	Ship Partial	Order Totals			
				Sub-Total	\$1,000.00		
Payment Type	Visa 💽 🗸 🚺	itial Payment Amount	\$500.00	Shipping	\$0.00	1	
CC Account #		Cash Control	AA ×	Handling	\$0.00	١	
CC Exp. Date	Pa	yment Schedule Type	None 💌	Tax	\$0.00	1	
Security #		Currency Type	US Dollar 👻	Total	\$1,000.00		
CC Auth Code		Order Level	Regular 💌	Balance	\$1,000.00		
CC Auth Type	NA						

- 4. Click Save. Click NO to not ship the order.
  - Note that the **Balance** field reflects an amount due after applying the partial payment.
- 5. Select the Accounting tab and then click the Order Payments sub-tab.
  - The system will display past payments applied to the order.
- 6. Click the New Record button to open a new Payments record.
  - The system automatically displays the payoff amount of the order. For this exercise, the payment amount will not be in full.



- 7. Double-click the **Payment Line** to open the **Payment Lines** record.
- 8. In the Amount field, enter half of the payoff amount.
- 9. Update the **Comments** to indicate that this is a partial payment.

Payment Lines Record  General Comments		
Applies To	Entire Order	•
<u>Order</u>	9857 🖓 📉	
Order Detail		-
Amount	\$250.00	$_{\rm M} \times$

- 10. Click **OK**.
- 11. On the new **Payments** record, select the **Details** tab.
- 12. From the Payment Type drop-down list, Select Visa.
- 14. In the CC Exp. Date field, enter 12/31/2014.

🛍 New Payments Re	cord
🚽 😼 🔩 💼 M	🖆 💷 🐎 🗞 🖦 🤚 🗞 🎲 🖛 🔗 🛞 🔒 🖕
Taken By Adam Sm	ith Organization Sampco Holdings, Inc. 🙈 🗙
Person Baldwin,	Aiesha/Danube Partners 🛛 🖓 🗙
Company Danube P	<u>'artners</u> → Corder Search Order # Invoice #
Payment Lines D	etails Authorizations GL Entries AP Integration Comments
Payment Status	Posted  Payment Type Visa  S
Payment Level	Regular         CC Account #         4111111111111111111111111111111111111
Cash Control Batch	CC Exp. Date \$2/31/2014
Payment Date	11/1/2011 Security #
Deposit Date	11/1/2011 CC Auth Code
Effective Date	11/1/2011 CC Auth Type NA 🖵
Service Charge	Account
Servio	e Charge \$0.00
	Refund
Currency Type	US Dollar
Status Info	

- 15. Click Save and Close.
- 16. Return to the Order Payments sub-tab on the Orders record.
  - Notice that the payment appears on the order.
- 17. Click Save.
- 18. Create another payment to pay off the remaining balance on the order.
  - Review Steps 6 through 15 if assistance is needed with this step.
- 19. Click Save and Close.

### **A Single Payment to Multiple Orders**

By using the Payments service, users are able to apply a single payment to multiple orders. The Payments service is found under the Order Entry application.

- 1. Open the New Order Wizard (Order Entry dashboard).
- 2. Create an order line for your XYZ Product.
  - The total should be \$100.
- 3. From the **Payment Type** drop-down list, select **Purchase Order**.
- 4. In the **PO** # field, enter 555.
- 5. Click Finish.
- 6. **Repeat** steps 1-4 (use **556** for the PO #).
- 7. Observe the Orders over the Last 30 Days (Order Entry dashboard).
- 8. Write down the <u>**TWO</u> PO Order IDs**:</u>

Orde Butt	er Ent ton B	ry D ar	ashboar	rd						_	
	New	Ord	er Wizar	d Ord	er Cancellation	Find Payn	nent	New Payment		Refund	d Wizard
+		B	💕 i 🖁	- X 🗐	Reports 🕅	📔 🛃 Add To L	ist 🕙 💁	S Prev	iew 🛛 🤷		j 🗟 🫃 🍇
oday	ays		ID	Date	Ship To	Company	Ship To Name	Order Type	Total	Balance	
Ę	8		10091	12/28/2013	Danube Partners		Aiesha Baldwir	Regular	19.95	0.00	Taken
Sol	ast		10092	12/30/2013	Danube Partners		Aiesha Baldwir	Quotation	12.00	12.00	Taken
ncts	Je L		10093	12/30/2013	Akebono Cryoge	nics Incorporated	Athena Scott	Regular	200.00	100.00	Taken
Prod	Orders Over th										

- 9. From the Order Entry dashboard, select New Payments button.
- 10. Click the Order # button and enter the ID for one of the orders written down in Step 8.

Payment Module	
Enter the Order ID	OK Cancel
9858	

- 11. Click OK.
  - A payment line is added for the full amount remaining on the order entered.

- 12. Click the **Order** # button again and enter the ID for the other order from Step 8.
- 13. Click OK.
  - A second payment line is added to the form.

🛍 New Payments Record
🛃 🖏 📲 🚔 🔚 🥘 📎 == 🎥 🥵 🔅 += 🔗 🛞 💭 🖕
Taken By Adam Smith Adam Smith Organization Sampco Holdings, Inc.
Person Aaronson, John/Tortuga Restaurante 🔠 🆓 🔀
Company Tortuga Restaurante A Corder Search Order # Invoice #
Payment Lines         Details         Authorizations         GL Entries         AP Integration         Comments
🖹 💕 🗙 🛱 Find 🛛 春 🗣 🌷 🚳
Order Applies To Is Tax Order Line # Amount Payment Amount Comments
9858 Entire Order 📃 0 100 \$100.00 Payment on Order ID: 9858
6342 Entire Order 🔲 0 17.95 \$17.95 Payment on Order ID: 6342
2 Items
Total \$117.95

- 14. Select the **Details** tab.
- 15. From the **Payment Type** drop-down list, select **Pre-Paid Check**.
- 16. In the **Check Number** field, enter a check number.
- 17. Click Save and Close.
- 18. Open the Orders Over the Last 30 Days view (Order Entry dashboard).
  - Notice that the two orders Balance Total is now \$0.00.
- 19. Open one of the orders from step 8 and select the Accounting > Order Payments tab.
  - Notice that the payment created appears under the Accounting tab.
- 20. Close all open records.

# **Apply a Single Payment to Multiple Order Lines**

At times, customers may only send a payment to pay for one item on a Purchase Order.

- 1. Open a new Order from the New Order Wizard.
- 2. Create order lines for the following products:
  - Line 1: 3 Sampco Baseball Hats
  - Line 2: 2 XYZ Kit Product
- 3. From the Payment Type drop-down list, select Purchase Order.
- 4. In the PO # field, enter 899.
- 5. Click Save.
- 6. Write down the amount in the **Extended** column for each order line item.
  - Line 1: \_\_\_\_\_
  - Line 2: \_\_\_\_
  - The order should have two order lines.
- 7. Save and Close the order.
- 8. Click on the New Payment button.
- 9. Click the **Order** # button.
- 10. Enter the Order ID from Step 7 and click OK.
  - Aptify adds a payment line for the full amount owed on the order.
- 11. Double-click the payment line to open the Payment Lines record.
- 12. Click the Applies To drop-down list and select Order Line.
- 13. From the **Order Detail** drop-down list, select order line **1** to apply a payment only against the Sampco Baseball Hat order line.
- 14. On the Payment Lines record, enter the extended amount for Line 1 in the Amount field.
- 15. Edit the Comments field and indicate this payment applies to one line of the order.

Payment Lines Record			
General 🔛 Comments			
Applies To	Entire Order		-
<u>Order</u>	9265		
Order Detail			-
Amount	\$0.00		$\mathbb{A} \times$
		ок	Cancel

- 16. Click OK.
- 17. To open a second Payment Lines record, click the New button.
- 18. Click the Applies To drop-down list and select Order Line.
- 19. In the Order field, enter the Order ID from Step 7.
- 20. From the Order Detail drop-down list, select order line 2.
- 21. In the Amount field, enter the extended amount for Line 2.
- 22. In the Comments field, enter Payment for 2 XYZ Kit Product.
- 23. Click OK.
  - Note that the Payment Total has increased to cover the entire order total.
- 24. On the new Payments record, select the Details tab.
- 25. From the Payment Type drop-down list, select American Express.
- 26. In the CC Account # field, enter 333331111122222.
- 27. in the CC Exp. Date field, enter 1/1/2012.
- 28. Click Save and Close.

### **Over Payments**

At times, a user may receive payments in the mail that are written for more than the balance due on orders. Aptify will allow processing of an overpayment. The overpayment will be considered a **Credit Memo.** The Credit Memo can be applied for future purchases by linking the credit order to a new Orders record.

In this exercise, a user will process an overpayment for an order and create a credit memo.

- 1. Create a new Order for one unit of the Sampco Baseball Hat product.
- 2. Enter a **PO** payment type with the PO number of **778**.
- 3. Save but do not close the order.
- 4. Select the Accounting tab and then select the Order Payments sub-tab.
- 5. *Right click* under the Payments area and select New Record from the pop-up list.
  - A new Payments record appears, with a payment line for the balance on the order.
- 6. Double-click the payment line to open the **Payment Lines** record.
- 7. Edit the **Comments** field to indicate that this payment line applies to 1 unit of *Sampco Baseball Hat* product. Click **OK** to close this record.
- 8. To open a second **Payment Lines** record, Click the **New Record** button.
- 9. In the Order field, enter the Order ID for the order opened in Step 1.
- 10. Leave the Applies To set to Entire Order.
- 11. In the Amount field, enter \$200.
- 12. In the Comments field, Enter Customer Overpayment.
- 13. Click OK.
  - The Payment Total updates to \$200 greater than the order amount.

👔 New Payments Record
🔜 😼 📲 🚔 🖆 💷 🐎 📎 🔤 🦉 🥵 🎲 🕶 ⊘ 🛞 🖕
Taken By Dave O'Connell A X Organization Sampco Holdings, Inc.
Person Aaronson, Edward/Danube Partners
Company Danube Partners Order Search Order # Invoice #
Payment Lines Details Authorizations GL Entries AP Integration Comments
Corder Applies To Is Tay Order Line # Amount Dayment Amount Comments
9 966 Entire Order - 0 19,95 \$19,07 Payment in full on Order #9866 to Sampco Base
9866 Entire Order 🗌 0 200.00 \$200.00 Customer Overpayment 💫
2 Item
Total \$219.95

- 14. Select the **Details** tab.
- 15. From the **Payment Type** drop-down list, select **Pre-Paid Check**.
- 16. In the Check Number field, enter a check number.
- 17. Click Save and Close.
- 18. Click Save on the Orders record.
  - Notice that the Balance on the order has been updated to (200.00), indicating that the Person has a \$200 credit. This order can be referenced as a Credit Memo to pay for another order from the same **Person** or **Company**.

Chapter



# 12

# **Membership Dues & Subscriptions**

Objective	12.1
Creating a Membership Dues Product	12.3
Ordering a Membership Dues Product	12.6
Manually Renewing Memberships/Subscriptions	12.8
Auto-Renewing Memberships/Subscriptions	12.10
Fulfilling the Auto-Renewal Standing Order	12.11
Cancelling a Membership/Subscription	12.12

# Objective

In Associations and Membership based organizations, the most important aspect tracked is <u>Membership</u>. <u>In Aptify, Membership is considered a Subscription based product due to</u> the tracking of deferred income.

The Subscriptions service keeps track of products sent to a Person on a recurring basis, such as membership, magazines, newsletters, or journals. Unlike a regular product item, a subscription product has the ability to track persons who are purchasing future issues and fulfill their orders based on their status.

Recall that Aptify allows users to create "extended" products that support additional product features based on the product type. Extended products, however, can also be a subscriptions product and sent to a customer regularly. A membership or a monthly journal are examples of extended, subscription products.

In this chapter, users will primarily be focused on Membership Subscription products/ orders, but these same steps/processes can be applied to Magazines, Periodicals, Newsletters, etc.

### **Two Types of Subscriptions**

There are two types of basic subscriptions that will be examined in this chapter:

- Manually renewed Membership Subscription
  - Subscription is ordered
  - Subscription is shipped
  - User Opens up a monthly view of Subscriptions for desired month
  - User runs the Subscription Renewal Wizard from View's toolbar
  - Order Quotations are generated for that Subscription
  - User generates invoices and sends them to customers
  - Upon receipt of new payment, user changes Subscription order from status of Quotation to Shipped

#### • Auto-renewed Membership Subscription

- Subscription is ordered
- User opens up the Order line for the Subscription
- User clicks the Auto Renew checkbox on the Subscription tab
- Subscription is shipped
- User can open up the Subscription order that was generated
- User can open the Renewal tab & click on the Standing Order link to modify:
  - Date Expires (match CC info/desired length of subscription)
  - Schedule
  - Order Information (change recipients)
- User runs Standing Order Fulfillment Wizard periodically to fulfill subscriptions that have associated standing orders

### Membership Subscription Length/Number of Copies

Same basic order process as for other product types except:

- Changes in an order line Quantity increase length of subscription
  - For example, ordering a Monthly Newsletter with a quantity of 2 creates a two-year subscription
- Ordering multiple copies of each issue for same Person/Company
  - Known as a "Bulk Subscription"
  - Specify number of copies on Order Line Details form
  - Order Total increases automatically if the number of copies increases

### **Creating a Membership Dues Product**

- 1. Click the Product Maintenance Application; open a new Products record.
- 2. In the Name field, enter XYZ Membership Dues (where XYZ are your initials).
- 3. In the Category field, enter Memberships.
- 4. Verify that **Type** is set to **General**.
- 5. Select the **Subscription** tab.
- 6. In the **Subscription Item** checkbox, place a **check mark**.
- 7. From the Subs. Type drop-down list, select Monthly.
- 8. In the **Issues** field, enter **12**.
  - Even though this is a one-year membership, a user configures the Subscription Type to Monthly with 12 issues to comply with General Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP).
- 9. In the Grace Period field, enter 1.
- 10. Verify that the **Restart After Days** field is set to **180**.
- 11. Change the Restart By field to Restart with New Subscription.

General 🐝	Membership Succession 🔠 Issues 🌉 Subscriptions 🚧 Subscription Fulfillments	
Subscription :	Item	
Subs. Type	Monthly	
Issues	12 Grace Period 1	
	Renewal Behavior Restart After Days 180 Restart By Restart with New Subscription	
	Calendar Year Subscription	
	Start Date	
	Turnover Date	
	Prorate Behavior None	

- 12. Select the Membership sub-tab (Under Subscription tab).
- 13. In the **Dues Product** checkbox, place a check mark.
- 14. In the Member Type field., enter Member
- 15. Leave the Member Start Date field set to Use Subscription Settings.



- 16. Select the Accounting tab and verify that the Deferred Income checkbox is checked.
- 17. Select the **Prices** tab.
- 18. Add a default Non-Member price of \$500.
- 19. Add a Member-Renewal price of \$250.

4	😃 Subscription 🛛 💭 Comments 🛛 Attachments						
Gen	General 🦪 Details 💽 Web 🐌 Prices 🎼 Hierarchy 🛷 Inventory Assembly 🗟 Accounting						
	Pricing Table Setti	ngs Adv	anced				
	🖹 💕 🗙 🛗 Find 🛛 🚡 🎓 🌷 🕘						
	Name	Price	Includes Tax	Member Type	Start Date	End Date	% of Base
	Non-Member 500.00 Non-Member (						0
	Member-Renewal 0.00			Member			0

20. Save and Close the record.

### **Understanding Membership/Subscription Dates**

By default, a subscription in Aptify begins on the date the order is taken and ends when all the issues have been fulfilled or the subscription is canceled. However, if a subscription or membership is annual, a user can specify a Start Date and Turnover Date in the subscription's Products record to create a renewal range.

- Any membership subscription created after the current Start Date but before the next Turnover Date is assigned the current year's subscription.
- Any membership subscription created after the Turnover Date and before the next Start Date is assigned next year's subscription.

For example, if the current membership subscription cycle started on January 1st and the next turnover date is March 31st, a subscription order placed on March 15th would have a start date of January 1st. The subscriber may receive back issues for the first three months of that year and then continue to receive monthly issues for the rest of the subscription period depending on the organization's business practice.

An order for the same product taken on April 1st would begin on January 1st of the following year because the order was taken after the turnover date.

If <u>no dates</u> are entered in the Start Date and Turnover Date fields, a subscription <u>begins on</u> <u>the date the order is taken and ends when all the issues have been fulfilled or the</u> <u>subscription is canceled.</u>

### **Understanding Membership/Subscription Renewals**

Organizations can determine how to handle lapsed subscriptions using the subscription product's **Renewal Behavior** settings. For example, an organization may wish to treat a renewal that is less than 60 days late as part of the original subscription, while classifying renewals after 60 days as new subscriptions.

Suppose, for example, that a customer wishes to renew their membership after it has lapsed for one year. Users would not want the subscription start date to be the end of their last subscription, since then their membership would expire immediately. In this case, the membership should be treated as a new subscription.

Alternatively, if a customer is only 30 days past due for renewing, an organization may wish to consider any membership purchase as a renewal, since the organization may offer benefits for maintaining continuous membership.

Note that while the system changes the Member Type of a Persons record or Companies record to a member status when the membership product is purchased, it does not change the Member Type back to a non-member status when the membership expires. This allows for an arbitrary grace period to be established. A view can be set up to list all persons or companies whose memberships have expired for *X* number of days, and then manually change their membership status back to a non-member type. Alternatively administrators can create an Entity Bulk Operation to update records in one operation.

### **Ordering a Membership Dues Product**

This exercise demonstrates how a Non-Member places an order for a dues product and how their Non-Member status automatically changes to a Member status.

- 1. Open a **Persons** record.
- 2. Select the Membership tab.
- 3. Note that the **Member Type, Co. Member Type,** and **Root Co. Member Type** are set to **Non-Member**.

nt Persons ID: 2529	
🔜 😼 🍕 🗙 💼 🕷 😭 🗉 🦃 🇞 🖘 👘 🏶 😳 🕫 🚳 🎯	0 -
Name Dave O'Connell	
Title Training Manager	
Company Marriott International, Inc.	M ×
Member Type: Member	
Company Member Type: Non-Member	
Meetings   Committees   D Analysis   Awards   Pictures   Comm	Orders Attachments
Member Type Non-Member	
Co. Member Type Non-Member	
Root Co. Member Type Non-Member	
Organization XYZ Organization	Dues Information
Status Active	Individual
Functional Title	Last Dues Amount \$0.00
Contact Rank	Last Pay Date
Directory Rank 0	Join Date
Exclude From	Termination Date
Mail Code State Senate	
Carrier Route State House	
US Congress County District	

- 4. Select the **Orders** tab.
- 5. In the toolbar, click the New Record button.
- 6. Create an order line for 1 unit of *XYZ* Membership Dues. (Find XYZ membership product, click ADD)
- 7. Enter payment information (use either Pre-Paid Check or a Credit Card). If CC, checkbox at bottom labeled, **Save for future use**.
- 8. When asked if the user wants to ship the order, click Save and click Yes.
  - Click the **Refresh** button.
  - Notice that the Customer Type reported on the Order changes to Non-Member/ Member.

Order Entry - O'Co	nnell, Dave/Marriott International, Inc.				×
🧿 Customer 🔤	Shipping 🙆 Accounting 閥 Cancellations	😃 Sub	scriptions 📔 🎽 M	essages 🛛 🖉 Attachments	
Order Date	11/2/2011		Order Addresses	✓ Ship To Address	
Ship To Ship To Company	O'Connell, Dave/Marriott International, In         Marriott International, Inc.         Marriott International, Inc.	<u>:</u>	Line 1	One Marriott Drive	
	Billing Same as Shipping		Line 2		
<u>Bill To</u>	O'Connell, Dave/Marriott International, In 🛛 🕅 🗙		Line 3		
Bill To Company	Marriott International, Inc. 🛛 🕅 🗙		City, State ZIP	Washington	DC 👻 20058
(	Customer Type:		County	District of Columbia	
	Non-Member/Member		Country	United States	•
<u>Campaign</u>	尚 ×			✓ Ship To Phone	
Ship Type	U.S. Mail		l l	1 201 200 2000	
Order Source	Walk-In 💌			1 301 300-3000 X	

- 9. From the order record, select the Subscriptions tab.
  - Notice that a Dues Subscription was created for this order.
- 10. Save and Close the order to return to the Persons record.
- 11. At the top of the Persons record, click the **Refresh** button.
- 12. On the Persons record, select the Membership tab.
- 13. Note the following changes that were made to the Membership tab:
  - The Member Type has changed to Member.
  - The **Dues Information** section is now filled in.

nt Persons ID: 2529	就 Persons ID: 2529 💼 📼				
🚽 😼 🐴 🗙 📋 🕅	i 🗉 i 🗞 🔤 👘 🖏 😯 🔅 🕶 🐼 🕘 🕘 🖕				
Name 💽 I	Jave O'Connell				
Title Training Man	ager				
Company Marriott Inte	rnational, Inc.				
Member Type Company Mer	: Member				
🎆 Meetings 🎒 Commi	tees 🔯 Analysis   Awards   🐖 Pictures   🔐 Comments   Attachments				
Member Type	Member				
Co. Member Type	Non-Member				
Root Co. Member Type	Non-Member				
Organization	XYZ Organization				
Status	Active Last Dues Amount \$500.00				
Functional Title	Last Pay Date 11/2/2011				
Contact Rank	Dues Paid Thru 11/1/2012				
Directory Rank	0 Join Date 11/2/2011				
Exclude From Mail Fr	IX Email V Directory Termination Date				
Mail Code	State Senate				
Carrier Route	State House				
US Congress	County District				

14. Close the Persons record.

### **Manually Renewing Memberships/Subscriptions**

The Subscription Renewal Wizard examines a Subscriptions record and generates a quotation order for the Subscription product. <u>Once the Quotation is created and a customer indicates</u> they wish to renew, users can change the quotation order to a regular order, and renew the subscription.

Aptify recommends configuring the messaging system to automatically email customers whose subscription will soon expire, reminding them to renew. This can be done by creating a view of subscriptions that will end within a certain time frame, and using the Subscription Renewal Wizard to create quotation orders for each subscription.

Users can then create a view of quotation orders and send a pre-configured message to each person associated with the orders. Different messages may be sent depending on when the subscription will expire, so that customers know when they must renew by, as well as how to renew.

Follow the steps below to manually renew a subscription:

- 1. Click the Membership dashboard.
- 2. Observe the All Active Subscriptions view.
- 3. Select the Membership Dues subscription at the very top sorted by ID.
- 4. Click the Subscription Renewal Wizard icon in the View Toolbar.



5. When prompted that the user is renewing 1 subscription, click OK.

Aptify Subscriptions	
Are you sure you want to renew 1 subscription?	
OK Car	ncel

6. In the **Due Date** field when prompted, enter the last date of next month.

🗡 Enter Date Value				
Renewal Due Date	3/31/2009			
	ОК	Cancel		

- 7. Click **OK** to continue.
- 8. When prompted that the renewal process is complete, click OK.
  - Aptify automatically created an order quotation for the subscription renewal.
- 9. Click the Order Entry dashboard
- 10. Look under the Orders Over the Last 30 Days view.
- 11. Locate the most recent order whose Ship To Name is your Person
  - This should be the order in the view with the highest ID number since it was the last order created by the system using your Employees record.
- 12. Double-click to open the quotation order.

Lines									×
Find Product		<b>#</b>	X Quantity	Add					K
Line Type Prod	luct ID Product	Description			Quantity	Price	Discount	Extended	
1 📈	3510 XYZ Membership Dues	Individual Sub	: Dave O'Connell. Start: 11	/2/2012 # Copies: 1	1.000	\$0.00	0	)	\$0.00
Summary									×
Order Type	Quotation	Order State	us Taken	- Shin G	Ord	er Totals			
Cider type	-			- Subi	urciur	Sub-Total		\$0.00	]
Payment Type	Purchase Order	• S •	Initial Payment Amount		\$0.00	Shipping		\$0.00	
PO #	RENEWAL		Cash Control	á	$\times$	Handling		\$0.00	1
Terms			Payment Schedule Type	None	-	Tax		\$0.00	1
Due Date	12/31/2011		Currency Type	US Dollar	-	Total		\$0.00	1
			Order Level	Regular	-	Balance		\$0.00	1

- 13. Change the Order Type from Quotation to Regular.
- 14. In the Summary area, enter the payment information (use Pre-Paid Check or credit card).
  - Note that the Payment Type defaults to Purchase Order for quotations created by the renewal wizard.
- 15. Click Save and click Yes to ship the order.
- 16. Select the Subscriptions tab.
  - Notice that the End Date is now two years from the Start Date. If a user opens the Subscriptions record, the number of **Issues Purchased** on the Marketing tab has increased to 24.

### **Auto-Renewing Memberships/Subscriptions**

Auto-Renewing subscriptions automatically generate standing orders that can regularly be converted to regular orders. Once the regular order is shipped, the subscription is renewed. Aptify strongly encourages all organizations to use auto-renewal, so that customers never forget to renew their membership.

- 1. Click the Order Entry Application
- 2. Click the New Order Wizard.
- 3. Enter a persons' record information. Create an order line for 1 unit of your **XYZ Sub**scription product.
- 4. Open the **Order Lines** record by double-clicking the orange box to the far left.
- 5. Select the Subscriptions tab of the Order Lines record.

Order Lines Record		
General Ship To Sul	oscriptions 📄 Comments	
In Memory Of		$\mathbf{A} \times$
In Honor Of		$\mathbf{A} \times$
Recipient	O'Connell, Dave/Marriott International, Inc.	$\mathbb{A}$ $\times$
Recipient Company		$\mathbb{A}$
Purchase Type	Individual Subscription Copies 1	
Subscription Start Date	11/7/2011	
Agent Order Number		
	V Auto Renew	
	ОК	Cancel

- 6. Check the Auto Renew checkbox.
- 7. Click the **OK** button.
- 8. Finish processing the order in the New Order Wizard.
- 9. Ship the order from the Orders Over the Last 30 Days view.

### **Fulfilling the Auto-Renewal Standing Order**

- 1. Click the Membership dashboard.
- 2. Observe the Active Standing Orders view.
- 3. Select the Membership Dues standing order at the very top sorted by ID.
- 4. Click the **Standing Order Fulfillment Wizard...** button in the View Toolbar to launch the wizard.



- 5. Click **Next** to continue.
- 6. Select the Process Only The Highlighted Records In The View option.

🖟 Aptify Standing Order Fulf	illment Wizard				×
Y Se f	Velcome to the A ou through the p ualified for distrit ulfilled. <b>Step 1: Selec</b> O Process A O Process C	ptify Standing Or rocess of filling al oution or have fre at <b>an option bel</b> Il Records In The Only The Highlight	der Fulfillment W I standing orders Iguencies where <b>ow</b> View 'My Standin ed Records In Th	'izard. This wizard will that have products standing orders should ig Orders' ie View - 1 record(s)	walk
	Cancel	Back	Next		Finish

- 7. Click Next to continue.
- 8. For Step 2, the wizard automatically inserts today's date as the Order Date. Click **Next** to continue without changing the Order Date.
- 9. To process the Standing Order, click Finish and then when prompted, click OK.
- 10. When notified that the Standing Order fulfillment completed successfully, click OK.
- 11. Within the **Standing Orders** view, double-click to open the standing order that was just fulfilled.
- 12. Select the **Purchases** tab.
- 13. There will be **no record** here until the date of shipment has been reached (i.e. the first day of the subscription), then deferred income will be actualized.

# **Cancelling a Membership/Subscription**

### **Subscriptions - Full Cancellation**

- 1. Open the New Order Wizard from the Order Entry dashboard.
- 2. Create an order line for 1 unit of your XYZ Subscription product.
- 3. Enter the payment information use saved credit card info.
- 4. Ship the Order from the Orders Over the Last 30 Days view.
- 5. In the View Toolbar, click the Order Cancellation Wizard button to launch the wizard.



- 6. Click Next.
- 7. In the **Order** field, enter the **ID** of the order created above (the subscription).
- 8. From the Cancellation Reason drop-down list, select Incorrect Product.
- 9. Click Next.
- 10. To the left of the row for the **XYZ Subscription** order line, place a **check mark**. Leave the **Cancel Quantity** set to **1**.
- 11. Click Next and follow the on-screen instructions to complete the cancellation process.
  - When prompted to select a balance type, select **Refund**. If prompted, in the **Check Number** field, enter "12345" for the refund check.
- 12. To open the cancellation order when prompted, click the Yes button.
- 13. When prompted, change the Order Status to Shipped and select Yes.
- 14. Save and Close the order.
- 15. When asked to process another cancellation, click No and close the wizard.
- 16. Open the view of the Subscriptions service.
- 17. Double-click the entry to open the corresponding Subscriptions record.
  - Notice that the **Status** field is set to **Cancelled** and the Cancellation Order cancelled all 12 issues of the monthly subscription.

4 Subscriptions ID: 1834					
🚽 😼 🐴 🗙 🏢 🕅 (	🛓 🗉 🖏 🗞 🖦 🧤 🦣 🚯 🔅 🕶 🔗 🛞 📮				
Subscriber	Baldwin, Carlos/Hanari Carnes				
Subscriber Company	Hanari Carnes 🔠 🗙				
Recipient	Baldwin, Carlos/Hanari Carnes 🛛 🖁 🗙				
Recipient Company	<u>₩</u> ×				
Product	XYZ Subscription				
<u>Chapter</u>	<u>₩</u> ×				
Status	Cancelled Num Copies 1.0000				
Issues Sent	0 Purchase Type: Individual				
Distribution Type	Hard Shipment				
Renewal 2 Comments Attachments       Purchases     2 Comments Chedule					
🖹 💕 🗙 🕅 Find	★ ★ ↓				
Order # Issues Sta 9866 12 11)	art Date         End Date         Agent         Agent Order #           7/2011         11/6/2011         -1				
9867 -12 11	7/2011 11/7/2011 -1				

18. Select the Marketing tab.

- Notice that the number of Issues Purchased is 0.
- 19. From the Reason Cancelled drop-down list, select No Longer Needed.

Comments Attachments						
Purchases 📸 Delive	ry Schedule 🕌 Delivery Log 🐌 Marketing 🚇 Renewal 📗					
Referred By	× A					
<u>Campaign</u>	<b>₩</b> ×					
Issues Purchased	0					
# Purchases	2					
Reason Cancelled	No Longer Needed 🗾 🔽					
Cancel Comments						

20. Click Save and Close.

### **Subscriptions - Partial Cancellation**

- 1. Open a new **Orders** form from the **Persons** record.
- 2. Create an order line for 1 unit of your XYZ Subscription product.
- 3. Enter the payment information in the Summary area (use Pre-Paid Check or Credit Card).
- 4. When asked to ship the order, click Save and click Yes.
- 5. Select the Subscriptions tab to confirm that a Subscription has been generated.
- 6. Save and Close the order.
- 7. Open a view of the Orders service.
- 8. Select the most recent order.
- 9. In the View Toolbar, click the Order Cancellation Wizard button to launch the wizard.
- 10. Click Next to begin the wizard.
- 11. Observe that the ID of the order created above (your **Persons** subscription) is already entered in the **Order** field.
- 12. Leave the Cancel Reason field blank.
- 13. Click Next.
- 14. In the checkbox for the XYZ Subscription order line, place a check mark.
- 15. Set the Cancel Quantity to .5.
  - This will cancel half of the subscription. Therefore, for a 12-month subscription, this will cancel 6 issues.
  - Note that a user can also enter a fraction (such as 6/12) in the Quantity field and Aptify will automatically convert the fraction to the decimal value.

Step 2: Specify Order Lines         Please specify one or more lines to cancel. Also, indicate the quantity which should be cancelled. To see order line details, click in the Product column.         Check All       Check None							
	Line	Product ID	Product	Description	Extended	Quantity 🖊	Cancel Quantity
V	1	3511	XYZ Subscription	Individual Sub: James Cross. Start: 11/7/2011 # Copies: 1	\$39.95	1.0000	0.5
Return Shipping Charge				Show Cancellation Fee Products			
Include Cancellation Fee Product							
		Prod	uct				
		F	е				

- 16. To complete the cancellation process, click Next and follow the on-screen instructions.
  - When prompted to select a balance type, select Keep On Account.
- 17. Click Yes when asked to open the cancellation order.
- 18. Change the Order Status to Shipped and when prompted, select Yes.
- 19. Save and Close the order.
- 20. When asked to process another cancellation, click No.
- 21. Open the view of the Subscriptions service.
- 22. Double-click the most recent entry to open the Subscriptions record.
  - Notice that the Subscription's Status is still Active but the End Date for the original subscription purchase is 6 months out rather than 1 year).



23. Select the Marketing tab.

24.

• Notice that the number of **Issues Purchased** is 6.

🚇 Renewal 🔛 Comm	nents Attachments
🔲 Purchases 🛛 🛱 De	livery Schedule 🔛 Delivery Log Marketing
Referred By	$ \mathbb{A} \times$
<u>Campaign</u>	<b>₩</b> ×
Issues Purchased	6
# Purchases	2
Reason Cancelled	Not Cancelled
Cancel Comments	

# Chapter 13



# Campaigns

Objective	. I
Using the Campaign Setup Wizard	.2
Adding Prospects to a Campaign	.4
Creating a Campaign Segment	.6
Adding Prospects from a Campaign Segment	.7
Applying a Campaign to an Order 13.	.8

#### Objective

In this chapter, users will have the opportunity to work with Campaigns. This includes:

- Creating Campaigns, manually or using the Campaign Setup Wizard
- · Creating Campaign Segments to target users' marketing efforts
- Adding Persons to a Prospect List
- Apply a Campaign to an Order

#### **Campaigns Overview**

Allows organizations to create different marketing campaigns

- Sales to move products
- · Campaigns to increase product awareness

Within the service, organizations have the ability to:

- Discount products based on Membership type
- Discount Products and/or Product Categories
- Tie a Prospect List to a campaign
- Track Prospect status
- · Whether they have accepted or declined the marketing offer
- Track Documents and Tasks related to a Campaign effort

At the time of order, the order entry clerk can specify a campaign for the entire order **or** apply the campaign to a specific order line

#### **Using the Campaign Setup Wizard**

The Campaign Management application enables users to incorporate products specifically tied to a marketing campaign in order to offer discounted prices. Once a campaign is tied to an order, all products linked to the campaign will display the appropriate discount.

- 1. Click to open the Campaign Management dashboard.
- 2. Click the Campaign Setup Wizard button.

Campaign Clumog ment Dashboard									
Car	mpai	gn Setup Wizard Find C	ampaign	Campaig	n List Builder	Campaign Import			
All I	in Pro	gress Campaigns							
	2	🗙 🔚 🖬 Reports 🦓	Add T	To List 📳	S 🔺 📮	<u>1</u> 8			
	ID	Name	Start Date	End Date	Orders Placed				
	3	General Marketing Campaign	1/1/2008	12/31/2013	373				
	4	FURN20	1/1/2012		2				
	5	Meet2013	1/1/2013		35				

- 3. In the Name field, enter XYZ Campaign.
- 4. In the Description field, enter Introduce XYZ Product.
- 5. Enter an End Date of one month from today.
  - The wizard automatically populates today's date in the **Start Date** field. Users can modify this date as necessary.
- 6. In the Coordinator field, enter the Employee.
- 7. Select the Invitation Required checkbox.
  - When checked, only persons and companies in the Campaign's prospect list with a status of Invited will be able to respond to the campaign.

Campaign Setup Wizard			
	Define the campaig Please enter the desc	<b>gn</b> rription, start date, end date, and coordinator for the campai <u>c</u>	ın.
	Name	XYZ Campaign	
	Description	Introduce XYZ Product	
	Start Date	1/24/20XX 31	
	End Date	2/24/20XX 31	
	<u>Coordinator</u>	John Samuels 🕺 🗙	
	l	Invitation Required	
	Ca	ncel Back Next	Finish

- 8. Click Next.
- 9. Leave the Status as In-Progress.

10. In the Type field, enter Marketing.

Campaign Setup Wizard				
	<b>Choose a Campaig</b> Important: In order f the status must be se	n Status and Type for campaign pricing to be used, it to In-Progress.		
	Status	In-Progress	-	
	<u>Type</u>	Marketing	$\mathbb{A}$	
	Cancel	Back Next		Finish

- 11. Click Next.
- 12. Select No to not add category pricing and click Next.
  - Discount Pricing can be added for a whole Category of different products.
- 13. Select Yes to add per-product pricing to the campaign and click Next.
- 14. In the **Product** field, enter *XYZ* **Product**.
- 15. In the Discount Type column for both Member & Non-Member row, select Discount %.
- 16. In the Amount field for the Member row, enter 20%.
- 17. In the Amount field for the Non-Member row, enter 10%.

Campaign Setup Wizard	_		_	
	Enter Product inform	nation for this campaign		
	Product X	YZ Product	× M	
	Currency Type	IS Dollar	AA 🗙	
	Member Type	DiscountType	Amount	Sub Member Type?
	Corporate Member	Discount%	20.0%	
	Individual Member	Discount%	20.0%	
	Member	Discount%	20.0%	
	Non-Member	Discount%	10.0%	
	Student Member	Discount%	20.0%	
	,			
	Can	el Back Nex	t	Finish

- 18. In the Amount field for all other Member Types, enter 20%.
- 19. Click Next.
- 20. When asked if a user wants to enter another product, select No, and click Next.
- 21. Click Finish to create the Campaigns record and click OK when the prompt appears.
- 22. Open the Campaigns record just created.
- 23. Select the **Discounts** tab and note how the wizard applied the settings to the record.
- 24. Click Close.

#### **Adding Prospects to a Campaign**

A list of prospects can be added to campaigns to identify the target audience for a direct marketing campaign. Aptify provides several technique to add Persons to a Campaign's Prospect List.

- 1. Open the XYZ Campaign record (if not already open).
- 2. Select the **Prospect List** tab.
  - Click the New Record button to open a new Campaign List Detail record.
- 3. From the **Type** drop-down list, select **Person**.
- 4. Use the Find Items dialog to locate the **Habika Harris** record (ID 8).
  - After selecting the record, **Harris**, **Habika/X.E.** Awaken Components Limited should appear in the Person field.
- 5. The **Prospect Status** field should default to **Invited**.
  - After a Person has responded to the marketing offer, they would return to this screen and change the Person's status as appropriate.

A New Campaign Li	st Detail Record	×
🛃 😼 🔩 💼 M	📬 💷 🎲 S 🔤 📲 📲 S 🔅 🖛 ⊗ I 🤅	0
General 🗛 Comm	ents Attachments	
<u>Campaign</u>	XYZ Campaign	$\mathbb{A} \times$
Туре	Person	-
Person	Harris, Habika/X.E. Awaken Components Limited	M ×
Company		$\mathbf{M} \times$
Campaign Segment		$\mathbf{A} \times$
	Is Generated	
Prospect Status	Invited	$\mathbb{A}$

- 6. Save and close the Campaign List Detail record.
- 7. Open a second Campaign List Detail record from the Campaign's Prospect List tab.
- 8. From the **Type** drop-down list in the second row, select **Company**.
- 9. Use the Find Items dialog to locate the U. Hardwick Physics AB record (ID 2).
- 10. Clear the Prospect Status field and enter Invited.
- 11. Click Save and Close.

- 12. Open the All View of Persons.
- 13. In the All View, select the first 8 persons that display.
- 14. In the View Toolbar, click the Add to Campaign button.

E Ot	彦 l tom	🛃 🗙 🖾 In Place Edit 🗍 an	🔙 📊 Reports 🕌 📲 Ad	ld To List 💌 🙊 💲 🔃 Preview	
	ID	First Name	Last Name	Company	
	4	Baka	Lambert	Ottoman	President
	346	Pablo	Harris	Ottoman	Advertising Ma
	688	Edward	King	Ottoman	Director, Sales
	1030	Valerie	Garner	Ottoman	Marketing Seni
	1372	Jessica	Hale	Ottoman	Advertising As
	1714	Yale	Wade	Ottoman	Director, Infor
	2056	Gary	Carter	Ottoman	Marketing Dire
	2398	Xia	Johnson	Ottoman	VP, Research

- 15. Use the Find Items dialog to select the XYZ Campaign record.
- 16. Click **OK** when prompted to add the **Persons** to the selected campaign.

Aptify Can	npaigns
?	You are about to add 8 record(s) to the campaign list. Click OK to Continue
	OK Cancel

- 17. Click **OK** after the records have been added to the campaign.
- 18. Open your XYZ Campaign record.
- 19. Confirm the 8 Persons from the All View have been added to campaign's prospect list.

Pr	rospect List for XYZ Campaign							
	ID	Туре	Person	Company	Status	Campaign	*	
	3136	Person	Harris, Habika/X.E. Awaken Components Limited		Invited			
	3137	Person	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners		Invited			
	3138	Person	Wade, Alexandra/U. Hardwick Physics AB		Invited		Ξ	
	3139	Person	Scott, Athena/Akebono Cryogenics Incorporated		Invited			
	3140	Person	Lambert, Baka/Ottoman		Invited			
	3141	Person	Yukon, Dacey/Polyhedron PowerDevices		Invited		-	
	3142	Person	Robinson, Emily/VC Osaka Technologies Group, Inc.		Invited		÷	
•					4			

#### **Creating a Campaign Segment**

An organization can use Campaign Segments to identify the target audiences for a marketing effort targeting multiple groups. In this exercise, users will create a Campaign Segment for the *XYZ* Product Launch Campaign.

- 1. Open a new record from the Campaign Segments service.
- 2. In the Campaign field, enter XYZ Campaign.
- 3. In the Name field, enter SF Student Members.
- 4. From the Filter Type drop-down list, select View.
- 5. From your shortcuts, select the San Francisco Student Members view.
- 6. In the **Rank** field, enter 1.

A New Cam	paign Segments Record
🛃 🖏 🖏	📄 👬 📷 💷 🥘 🤤 🐜 🤚 🍓 🎲 🖛 🔗 🛞 💂
General	Campaign Segment Documents Attachments
Campaign	XYZ Campaign
Name	SF Student Members
Filter Type	View
SQL Query	
View	San Francisco Student Members
Rank	1

- 7. Click Save.
- 8. Close the record.

## **Adding Prospects from a Campaign Segment**

- 1. Open a view of the Campaigns service.
- 2. In the View Toolbar, click the Campaign List Builder Wizard button.

all	💕 🛛 Car	🗙 🗐 🔚 Reports 🕌 📲 Add mpaigns	To List		51		
	ID	Name	scripti	art Da	nd Dat	ordina	ordina
	1	Spring 2009 Membership Campaign	Sign u	/2009	/2009	Tim Jo	Tim Jc
	2	Summer 2009 Membership Campaign	Sign u	/2009	/2009	Jane S	Jane :
	3	General Marketing Campaign	Demoi	/2008	/2011	Ian W	Ian W
	4	XYZ Product Launch Campaign	Camp.	/2009	/2009	Linda	Linda
	5	XYZ Simple Products Campaign	Camp	/2009	/2009	Linda	Linda

- 3. Click Next to begin the Aptify Campaign List Builder Wizard.
- 4. In the Campaign field, enter XYZ Campaign.
- 5. Select the Initialize List checkbox.
- 6. **Clear** the **Preserve Manual List Entries**. If this was left checked, the wizard would leave intact any prospects that were manually added to the list but not add any of the Segment values.
- 7. Select No Response from the Default Status drop-down list.

🗡 Aptify Campaign List Bu	uilder Wizard	×
	Step 1: Select the campaign and options below and hit 'Next' to I <u>Campaign</u> <u>XYZ Campaign</u> Initialize List Preserve Manual List Entries Default Status Invited	ouild the lis
[	Cancel Back Next	Finish

- 8. Click Next.
- 9. When prompted, click Finish that the campaign has been built.
- 10. Open the XYZ Campaign record.
- 11. Review the list of Prospects that were added by the Campaign Builder Wizard.
  - Each Person from the **San Francisco Student Members** view has an entry in the **Prospect List**.

#### Applying a Campaign to an Order

In this exercise, users will learn how to apply a campaign to an entire order and to each individual item in an order.

#### Applying a Campaign to an Entire Order

- 1. Open the Order Entry Application.
- 2. Click on the **Orders** Service.
- 3. Right click the Service arrow, select New Orders Record.
- 4. In the Campaign field (left middle portion of record) enter XYZ Campaign.
  - When applying a single campaign to an entire order, a user **MUST** enter the Campaign first before adding products to the order.
- 5. In the Ship To field, enter Mary Warner (use the format: Warner, Mary).

Note that a user can use Campaign pricing with any Person; the Person does *not* need to be on the Campaign's Prospect

Campaign XYZ Campaign Ship Type Grandel Order Source Walk-In		✓ Ship To Phone           1           650           750-9187	
Lines			×
Find Product	🗎 🗙 Quantity	1 Add	×
Line Type Product ID Product	Description	Quantit Price Discount Extended	
1 👸 9922 XYZ Product		1 \$100.00 10	\$90.00

- 6. Create an order line for 2 units of XYZ Product.
  - Note that the Campaign Discount is applied automatically. Since Mary Warner is a Non-Member in the example above, the discount is 10%. The specific discount rate may vary depending on the current membership status of Mary Warner and her company in the training database.
- 7. Click Next.
- 8. Enter payment information on the **Payment** tab.
- 9. Save the record and click NO when asked if the user wants to ship the order.
- 10. Click Save and New.

#### Applying a Campaign to Each Order Line

- 1. Enter a Person in the Ship To field. (This is the Persons record created previously).
- 2. Create an order line for 1 unit of *XYZ* Product.
- 3. Double-click a non-editable field (such as Product name) in the Order Line row to open the Order Lines record.
- 4. Enter XYZ Campaign in the Campaign Code field.
  - The system automatically calculates the appropriate discount percentage based on the person's and company's member type. In the example below, the person or company is a member so the discount is calculated as 20%.

Order Lines Record								
General Ship To	🔍 Com	ments						
Quantity	1	Drice	¢100.00	Die	count	10.0000		
Quantity	1	FILLE	\$100.00	Dis	counc	10.0000		
Inventory Location	XYZ Organi	zation/	XYZ Ware	house			<b>34</b> ×	
	Not Retu	irned T	o Stock					
Campaign Code	XYZ Campa	iqn			>		$\mathbb{A}$	
Chapter	Ì						$\mathbf{A} \times$	
	📃 Allow De	scripti	onOverrid	le 🛛	Disc	ount Over	rridden	
Description								
								Ш
								Ш
								Ш
								Ш
								Ш
								Ш
								4
						ОК	Cancel	

- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Create an order line for 1 copy of the book called *The Sampco Way*.
- 7. Double-click a non-editable field (such as Product name) in the Order Line row to open the Order Lines record.

- 8. In the Campaign Code field, enter XYZ Campaign.
  - Notice that a discount is applied to the order line. For example, if the person and company on the order are both non-members, the discount percent is 1%. This corresponds to the \$1.50 discount for non-members specified when creating the campaign in Exercise 2. (The Order Entry system automatically calculates the percentage discount: \$1.50/\$150.00 = 1%.)
- 9. Click **OK** to return to the order.
- 10. Save the record and click No when asked if the user wants to ship the order.
- 11. Close the order.

# Chapter



# Meetings

Objective	14.1
Using the New Meeting Wizard	14.2
Creating Meeting Registrations	14.11
Placing a Person on the Waiting List	14.13
Checking Meeting Registrants	14.14
Canceling a Registration	14.15
Closing a Meeting	14.17
Transferring a Meeting Registration	14.19

## Objective

The Meetings function enables users to track meetings, meeting sessions and meeting registrants. After completing this exercise, users will be able to:

- Copy an existing Meeting using the New Meeting Wizard
- Understand the parts of the Meeting record
- Order a meeting and register additional students on an order
- View all meeting Registrants
- Close a meeting and track Attendees

#### **Overview**

"Extended" product type

- Supports Meeting-specific features in addition to the General Product features
- Same setup and configuration as a standard Product
- Meetings use a Products record that includes an additional Meeting tab

Tracks meeting registrants, attendees, and additional information about the meeting

- Uses Aptify Inventory system to manage meetings with limited space
- Nearby hotels for attendees
- Meeting Location
- Required resources (such as audio/visual equipment)
- Sessions

#### **Using the New Meeting Wizard**

The New Meeting Wizard enables users to create a new meeting based on the information entered in an already existing meeting. This can save valuable time as Meeting coordinators often have similar meetings scheduled throughout the year that they can simply copy and then adjust details concerning such as dates, time, speakers, location, etc.

In this exercise we will use the **New Meeting Wizard** to copy an existing XYZ Meeting and make some modifications to make it unique.

- 1. Click on the Meeting Management Application.
- 2. Click on the New Meeting Wizard button.



- 3. The first screen of the Meeting Wizard will display.
- 4. In the Copy **Existing Meeting** field, enter **XYZ Meeting** (exactly; do not substitute xyz for your initials).
- 5. Click the Tab button. Click to Select a meeting.
- 6. Click the Next button.

🥵 New Meeting Wiza	rd	_ 0 🔀
	Welcome to the New Meeting Wizard! This wizard walks you through the process of adding a new meeting to Aptify. If you want to use a copy of an existing meeting as your starting point, select a record u Copy Existing Meeting link box and click Next. Otherwise, to start with a blank meeting, Next.	ising the just click
	Copy Existing Meeting XYZ Meeting	A ×
Help	Cancel Back Next	Finish

- 7. The second screen of the New Meeting Wizard displays.
  - On this screen users can edit the basic information concerning the meeting such as the name, date, coordinator, etc.
- 8. Change the **New Product Name** field to your initials plus the word Meeting (i.e. DOC Meeting).
- 9. Change the Start Date and Time to next week on Monday.
  - The year should automatically have defaulted to the current year.
  - IGNORE the dates in the screenshot; these are just placeholders
- 10. Change the End Date and Time to next week on Friday.
- 11. Click the **Next** button.

🥵 New Meeting Wizar	d			- • •
	New Product Name	XYZ Meeting		
		Other Names Same As Product Name	ame	
	New Meeting Name	XYZ Meeting		
	Category	<u>Meetings</u>		A ×
	Parent Meeting			$\mathbf{M} \times$
	Meeting Type			$\mathbf{M} \times$
	Web Name	XYZ Meeting		
		🔲 Web Enabled	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	Meeting Conflict Type	No Conflict Validation	Max Registrants 3	
	Meeting Dates			
	Start Date and Time	10/31/2011	End Date and Time 11/4/2011	
	Registration Opens		Registration Closes	
	Rev. Rec. Date			
	Coordinator	John Samuels		#1 ×
	<u>Organization</u>			$\mathbf{M} \times$
	Committee			$\mathbf{A}$ $\times$
	Linked Expo			$\mathbf{A}$ $\times$
	Description			
Help		Cancel Back	Next	Finish

- 12. The third screen of the New Meeting Wizard displays.
  - This screen enables users to edit the Meeting Logistics and information such as Location, Sponsors, Topic Codes, etc.
- 13. Leave the information intact.

8 New Meeting Wizar	d					
	The wizard will copy the checked below. For exa will be copied to the ne	e specified information fr mple, if you leave Topic C w meeting.	om the existing meeting odes checked, the Top	g to the new meeting for eac ic Codes selected on the orig	h item that is ginal meeting	
	Speakers	🖊 Hotels 🛛 🔽 Ed	ucation Units	🛿 Pricing/Prerequisites 🛛 📝	Attributes	
	Resources	🛛 Sponsors 🛛 🔽 To	pics Codes 🛛 🛛	Accounting		
	If the meeting you entered has any sessions, those sessions will appear in the grid below. Remove the check mark from any session that you do not want to copy. For sessions that you do want to copy, you can modify the Meeting Title and dates directly within the grid or double-click to open a form. Note that the wizard will copy information from the original session to the new session based on the options you checked above.					
		Selected	Meeting Title	Session Start Date	Session End Date	
	XYZ Session II		XYZ Session II	10/31/2011 1:00:00 AM	10/31/2011 3:00:00 AM	
	XYZ Session I	<b>v</b>	XYZ Session I	11/2/2011 10:00:00 AM	11/2/2011 11:00:00 AM	
Help		Cancel	Back Next		Finish	

- 14. In the Meeting Title column, double-Click on the Meeting Title, XYZ Session I
- 15. Observe that the basic information could be edited for the Session at this time.
  - Observe the dates have automatically justified based on the date choices for the main meeting on Wizard screen #2.

Meeting Cloning Wiz	ard Sessions	
General		
Meeting Title	XYZ Session I	
Session StartDate	11/2/2011 10:00:00 AM	
Session End Date	11/2/2011 11:00:00 AM	
Meeting ID	XYZ Session I	A X
	OK and New OK	Cancel

#### 16. Click OK.

- 17. Click the **Next** button.
- 18. Click the **Finish** button.

🔒 New Meeting Wizar	d	- • •
	The wizard is now ready to create the new meeting. Click Finish to continue.	
Help	Cancel Back Next	Finish

- 19. The finished Meeting Product record will now display.
- 20. Observe the changes to the Name and Date that were made in the wizard.
- 21. Select the Meeting Logistics tab.

A Products ID: 992	1 1 🖬 🗉 🐎 🎯 🖘 🐄 🗞 😵 🔅 🕶 🚳 🛞 💂	
Name	XYZ Meeting	
Category	Meetings A >	<
Туре	Meeting	
Parent Product	8 <u>4</u> >	<
Meetings <i> P</i> ro	oduct Details 📄 Web 🐌 Prices 🏝 Accounting 🍃 Comments	Attachments
General Meeti	ng Logistics Registrations	
Meeting Title	XYZ Meeting	
Start Date	10/31/2011 End Date 11/4/2011	
Status	Planned  Close Meeting.	
Meeting Type	A (	K
<u>Coordinator</u>	John Samuels	<
Linked Expo	A6	<
Meeting Conflict	No Conflict Validation	
Max Reg.	3 Avail. Space 3	
Description		<b>^</b>
		×

- 22. The Location tab defaults as displayed.
  - The **Meeting Logistics** tab displays the information that has been stored specifically for this Meeting including the Sessions.
- 23. Observe the Location tab information.
  - This tab displays information about the location of the meeting and can include room information as well.
  - Venue and Room records can be created/saved to create a database of reusable values

General Meet	ing Logistics Registrations	
Location See	ssions Speakers Sponsors Hotels Resources Education Units	Attributes
Venue	Test Venue	
Room	Test Room	
Room Type	Lecture Hall Capacity 50	
Place	Test room / Test Venue	
Line 1	11 Relaxation Drive	
Line 2		
Line 3		
City, State ZIP	Marathon FL 💌 33050	
County	Monroe	
Country	United States	
	Phone 💽 🗈	
Directions	From Airport: L on Main St follow 4 miles R on Sessions Ave follow 400 yards R on Relaxation Drive - 11 Relaxation	

24. Select the Sessions tab.

- 25. The two sessions that carried over from the Wizard are available.
- 26. Double-click the **XYZ Session I** record and change the **Product Name** and **Meeting Name** to your initials.
- 27. Save and Close the record.
- 28. Double-click on the **XYZ Session II** record and change the **Product Name** and **Meeting Name** to your initials.
- 29. Save and Close the record.

General Meeting Logistics Registrations		
Location <b>Sessions</b> Speakers Sponsors Hotels Re	sources Education	n Units Attributes
🛄 List 📸 Calendar 🔇 By Location		
🖹 😂 🗙 🔚 🔚 🔚 Reports 🕌 📲 Add To Lis	t 🖭 💲 🛆 🔕	}
Meetings		_
ID Meeting Title	Start Date 🔺	End Date
41 XYZ Session II	10/31/2011	10/31/2011
42 XYZ Session I	11/2/2011	11/2/2011
		2 Records

30. Select the Speakers tab.

31. The Speaker that was designated on the original record displays.

General Meeting Logistics Registrations	1				
Location Sessions Speakers Sponsors	Hotels	Resourc	es Edu	cation Units	Attributes
🖹 💕 🗙 🖁 Kind 🛛 🚡 🚸 🖊	0				
Speaker	Status	Туре	Title	Start Date	End Date
Yukon, Dacey/Polyhedron Power Devices	Proposed	Regular	Speaker	10/31/2011	10/31/2011
•					Þ.
					1 Item

- 32. Double click on the **Speakers** record.
- 33. Change the Start Date to next Monday at 9:00 AM.
- 34. Change the End Date to next Monday at 10:00 AM.

General Comm	ents Evaluations
Speaker	Yukon, Dacey/Polyhedron Power Devices
Status	Proposed 💌
Туре	Regular
Title	Speaker
Description	
Start Date	12/26/2011 9:00:00 AM
End Date	12/26/2011 11:00:00 AM
Evaluation	Average
Content Quality	Average
Speaker Quality	Average 💌
Cost	\$0.00
Date Rejection Sent	
	Reimburse Speaker
Max Expenses	\$0.00
	OK and New OK Cancel

35. Click the **OK** button.

- 36. Select the **Sponsors** tab.
- 37. Sponsors can be added, edited, and deleted as needed.

Gene	ral Meet	ting Logistics	Registra	tions			
Loc	ation Se	ssions Speak	ers Spo	nsors Hotels	Resources	Education Units	Attributes
B	💕 🗙	📸 Find 🔒	•	€ 0			
	Sponsor	Contact		Amount			
	Ottoman	Lambert, Baka,	/Ottoman				\$1,000.00

- 38. Select the **Hotels** tab.
- 39. **Hotels** and their locations, offers and directions can be added, edited, and deleted as needed.

General	Meeting Logistics	Registrations						
Locatio	n Sessions Spea	kers Sponsors	Hotels Resource	es Education Units	Attributes			
🖹 🞽	🖹 💕 🗙 🛗 Find   🚡 🏠 🖶 💆 🔞							
Hotel		Special Offering	Offer Start Date	Offer End Date				
Marriot - Marathon Key		20 % off total stay	10/31/2011	11/4/2011				

- 40. Select the **Resources** tab.
- 41. **Resources** and their types, quantity, start and end dates can be added, edited, and deleted as needed.

Gener	al Meeting	Logistics	Registrations						
Loca	Location Sessions Speakers Sponsors Hotels Resources Education Units Attributes								
B	🧉 🗙 i 🕯	Find	• • • •	0					
	Resource	Checked	Double Checked	Quantity	Start Date	End Date			
	Podium			1	10/31/2011	11/4/2011			
	White Board			1	10/31/2011	11/4/2011			

- 42. Select the Education Units tab.
- 43. Education Categories can be set up to track how many Continuing Education Units an attendee will receive for attending a particular meeting.
- 44. Double click on the Continuing Education Units line.

General	Meeting Logistics	Registrations			
Locatio	n Sessions Speak	ers Sponsors Hotels F	lesources	Education Un	iits Attributes
1	🗙 🕍 Find 🛛 🚡	<b>↑</b> ↓ <u>↓</u> @			
Edu	cation Category	Education Category Status	Primary	Education Units	СЕ Туре
Con	tinuing Education Units	Active		2	Education Unit

- 45. The Meeting Education Units Record displays.
- 46. These records can be added and edited to fit the class requirements.

Meeting Education Unit	s Record	
General		
CE Type	Education Unit	•
Education Category	Continuing Education Units	× M
Primary Function		$\mathbf{A} \times$
Education Units	2.00	
Certifications		
If tracking CE units the Type and enter which these units v	as Certifications in Aptify Education Management, the corresponding Requirement (Course) or Curric will apply.	select culum to
Certification Type	Requirement	-
Requirement		$\mathbb{A}$
Curriculum		$\mathbb{A}$
	OK and New OK	Cancel

- 47. Once a student is marked as **Attended** (But not just as Registered) for this meeting he or she will automatically receive the designated number of credits.
- 48. Click OK on the Meeting Education Units record.
- 49. Save and Close the Meeting record.

#### **Creating Meeting Registrations**

In this exercise, a user will order three of the XYZ Meeting products just created so that a user can register three separate individuals for that meeting (your Person and IDs #1 and #2). A user will also order the associated sessions for just your Persons record.

- 1. Click the Order Entry dashboard.
- 2. Click the New Order Wizard button. Enter a Persons' information for Ship To.
- 3. Add *XYZ* Meeting to the Order Line.
- 4. When a user Adds the product, a pop up window will display with **Registration** and **Session** information.
  - The auto-pop up of the Order Line/Registration information can be enabled at the Product level on a per **Product** or per **Category** level.
- 5. Check the box next to XYZ Session I.
- 6. Select the Dec. 28 20xx tab.
- 7. Check the box next to XYZ Session II.
- 8. Click the Save button.

Related Meeting Se	ssions: XYZ Meeting	(9921)					E
<u>Registra</u> Existing Registra	nt O'Connell, Dave/A	ptify 🏦 🗙	Reg Type <u>Campaign</u>	Pre-Registration	• *		
Nov 02, 2011 Oc	t 31, 2011 All Selecte	d					
Select	Product ID	Product		Start Date	End Date	Place	Description
	9923	XYZ Session I		11/2/2011 10:00 AM	11/2/2011 11:00 AM		
•			11	1			•
					Select	All Unselect All	Save

9. On the success message, Click **OK**.



- 10. DO NOT close the Pop up window
- 11. Observe BOTH the **Meeting** product and each of the **Sessions** have been added as Registrations to the Order Lines.

	Find P	roduc	<u>t</u>		A Quantity 1	Add	
4	Line	Туре	Product ID	Product	Description	Quantity	_
	1	62	9916	XYZ Meeting	Registration for Dave O'Connell		1
	2	622	9917	XYZ Session I	Registration for Dave O'Connell		1
	3	62	9918	XYZ Session II	Registration for Dave O'Connell		1

- 12. In the Pop up window, delete your name from the Registrant field.
- 13. Enter ID #1 (Aiesha Baldwin)
  - This will now register a second person from this Pop Up window
- 14. Clear the two Sessions; to only register Aiesha for the Main Meeting.
- 15. Click the Save button.
- 16. On the Success pop up, click OK.
- 17. Repeat steps 11-15 for ID #2 (Alexandra Wade).
- 18. Close the Pop up window (x in upper right).
- 19. Observe the complete Order Lines:

Line	Туре	Product ID	Product	Description	Quantity
1	<b>6</b>	9921	XYZ Meeting	Registration for Dave O'Connell	1
2	1	9923	XYZ Session I	Registration for Dave O'Connell	1
3	1	9922	XYZ Session II	Registration for Dave O'Connell	1
4	1	9921	XYZ Meeting	Registration for Aiesha Baldwin	1
5	<b>6</b> 2	9921	XYZ Meeting	Registration for Alexandra Wade	1

- 20. Enter the Payment at the bottom of the screen using the saved Credit Card.
- 21. Click Save and Close.
- 22. Click Yes when asked if the user wants to ship the order.

#### **Placing a Person on the Waiting List**

- 1. Open a new order from the New Order Wizard using ID #3 (Athena Scott).
- 2. Order one of the XYZ Annual Meeting. Click Add.
- 3. On the Waiting List Warning Pop up, click OK.

Aptify Ord	der Entry: Inventory
0	There are 0 slot(s) available for this meeting.
Î	You may proceed with this order. However, the customer should be placed in the waiting list.
	Click OK to place this customer on the waiting list.
	ОК

- 4. The **Registration** Pop up will display.
- 5. Click Save.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Enter a **Payment** with a **Pre-Paid Check** number of **1234**.
- 8. Click Save.
- 9. Click Save and Close.
- 10. Click No when asked if the user wants to ship the order.
  - The order can not ship since the meeting lacks sufficient inventory.
  - The order will remain in a **Taken** status.

#### **Checking Meeting Registrants**

- 1. Click the Meeting Management dashboard.
- 2. Observe the Registration By Count dashboard View.
  - Shows registrations by Meeting
  - Shows registrations by Session

Folder List 무	Meeting Management - Global
A Home	Meeting Buttons
Sustomers	New Meeting
Meeting Management	Wizard
🖗 Order Entry	
Product Maintenance	
	Registration Count By Meeting (For Next 30 Days)
	🗈   ℓ↓ Z↓ 🔐 👰   Σ+ 🖾 👼 %↓   =≣ @∃ 🗰 🖬   😫   🌺   🛗 🔳
	Registration Count By Meeting (For Next 30 Days)
	Meeting Title   Order ID   Quantity   Attendee Name
	XYZ Meeting + 9862 1 O'Connell, Dave/Aptify
	9862 1 Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners
	9862 1 Wade, Alexandra/U. Hardwick Physics AB
	▶ 9863 1 Scott, Athena/Akebono Cryogenics Incorporated
	# Attendees 4
	XYZ Session I + 9862 1 O'Connell, Dave/Aptify
	# Attendees 1
	XYZ Session II + 9862 1 O'Connell, Dave/Aptify
	# Attendees 1

- 3. Expand the Meeting Management application (if not already expanded).
- 4. Expand the Meetings service.
- 5. Run the pre-loaded Wait List prompted view.
- 6. Observe the results; Athena Scott should display.

NOTE: These are just two of multiple methods to find and see this information.

#### **Canceling a Registration**

The **Order Cancellation wizard** can be used to cancel orders that have one or more meeting registrations. In this exercise, users will employ the wizard to cancel the second person ordered for a Meeting registration.

- 1. Open the view titled, Orders Over the Last 30 Days.
- 2. Identify and highlight the Order ID that has three XYZ Meeting Registrations.
- 3. Launch the Order Cancellation Wizard (top of the view)
- 4. Enter the Cancellation Reason.
- 5. Click Next.
- 6. The Cancellation wizard displays all order lines.
- 7. Check the box to the left of the order line for the Alexandra Wade.
- 8. Click Next to continue.

Aptify Order Cancellation	n Wizar	rd							- • •
	Step Pleas	se spe	cify Orde	r Lines ore lines to cancel. Also, in	dicate the qua	ntity which should be cancelled. To	see order lin	e details, clio Check	k in the Product column.
		Line	Product ID	Product		Description	Extended	Quantity	Cancel Quantity
		1	9921	XYZ Meeting		Registration for Dave O'Connell	\$200.00	1.0000	0
		2	9923	XYZ Session I		Registration for Dave O'Connell	\$75.00	1.0000	0
		3	9922	XYZ Session II		Registration for Dave O'Connell	\$150.00	1.0000	0
		4	9921	XYZ Meeting		Registration for Aiesha Baldwin	\$200.00	1.0000	0
	<b>V</b>	5	9921	XYZ Meeting		Registration for Alexandra Wade	\$200.00	1.0000	1.0000
		Retu Indu	n Shipping ( de Cancellati Prod Fé	Charge on Fee Product 	Sho	w Cancellation Fee Products			
				Cancel	Back	Next			Finish

- 9. Select Keep On Account and click Next to continue.
- 10. Click Finish to generate the cancellation order.
- 11. Click Yes when prompted to open the cancellation order.
- 12. Change the Order Status to Shipped.
- 13. Select Yes when asked if all items have shipped.
- 14. Save and Close the cancellation order.
- 15. Click No when asked if the user wants to process another cancellation.
- 16. Open the Person record for Athena Scott.
- 17. Select the **Orders** tab.

- 18. Open the order for the *XYZ* Meeting.
- 19. Click on the order line.
- 20. Select the Meetings tab.
- 21. Change the Status from Waiting to Registered.
- 22. Click OK.
- 23. Change the **Order Status** from **Taken** to **Shipped**. Click **Yes** when asked if all items have been shipped.
- 24. Save and Close the record.
- 25. Open the Meetings record (if not already open).
- 26. Confirm that the person has been moved from the **Wait List** tab to the **Registrants** tab on the Meeting Product.

## **Closing a Meeting**

- 1. Open the Meetings record (if not already opened).
- 2. Select the Meetings tab and select the General sub-tab (if necessary).
- 3. Change the Status from Planned to Occurred.
- 4. Click the Close Meeting... button.
- 5. From the Filter drop-down list, select Registered.
  - This displays only the meeting's Registrants.
- 6. For the first entry, click the Status field and select Attended from the drop-down list.
  - This method can be used to change the Status for each Person individually.

Products ID: 992	1						
🔜 🔩 🔩 💼 🕯	🎙 😭 🖪 🗎 🧞		🖢 🚱 🛟 🗠 🐼	📀 🕕 📮			
Name	XYZ Meeting						
Category	Meetings			<b>M</b> ×			
Туре	Meeting			-			
Parent Product				<b>*</b>			
Meetings <i> P</i> r	oduct Details 🛛 🖻 V	Veb 🍗 Pric	es 🙆 Accounting	Comments	Attachments		
General Meet	ing Logistics Regi	strations					
Meeting Title	XYZ Meeting						
Start Date	10/31/2011		End Date 11/4/201	1			
Status	Occurred			Close Meeting			
Meeting Type	Close Meeting Wiz	ard					
Coordinator	Update the Registra	tion Status for	reach Person below	Filter <all></all>	-		
Linked Expo	Person $\nabla$	Order ID	Status				
Meeting Conflict	Wade, Alexandr	9862	Cancelled				
Max Reg.	Scott, Athena/A	9863	Registered				
Description	O'Connell, Dave	9862	Registered				
	Baldwin, Aiesha/	9862	Registered				
1			-				
-	Change All		L	ок с	ancel		

- 7. Click the Change All button.
- 8. From the Status drop-down list, select Attended.

Change	All Status Type	25	×
<u>S</u> tatus	Attended		•
		<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel

- 9. Click OK.
  - The Status changes to Attended for all Persons in the list.
- 10. Click OK to close the Close Meeting Wizard.
- 11. Click **OK** to update all **Registrant** information.
- 12. Select the Attendees tab.
  - Confirm that all three registrants are now listed under the Attendees tab.
- 13. Click Save and Close to close the Meetings record.

#### **Transferring a Meeting Registration**

The meeting transfer wizard is able to perform two functions for an existing meeting registration. It can substitute a different person for the same meeting, or it can transfer a person's existing meeting registration to a different meeting.

- The wizard is available for orders in either a Taken or Shipped status
- For Shipped Orders, the process creates a cancellation order and then a new transfer order
- 1. Create an Order for the Golf Meeting (ID 9927).
- 2. Save and Ship the Order.
- 3. Open up a View of All Meetings (may need to create).
- 4. Click on the Meeting Transfer Wizard button.

I	Ma	nage	ement 🕨	🎇 Meetings 🕨 All		$\frown$		
	🖹 🧭 🗙 🔚 🖬 Reports 🕌 📲 Add To List 🗐 😂 🛕 🎭 🔒							
Į	٩I		_		_			
Γ	4	ID	1eetingIl 🔺	Product	Start Date	End Date	Meeting Title	
		1	1	Financial Planning	6/30/2010	7/1/2010	Financial Planning	
		2	2	Human Resources Management	7/4/2010	7/4/2010	Human Resources Management	

- 5. Enter your **Persons** name in the **Persons** field.
- 6. Enter the Golf Meeting (ID 9927) in the Meeting field.

**Note:** If a user remembers the **Order ID**, they can put that in the Order field without filling out the Person or Meeting fields.

A Meeting Transfer Wizar	d 🖸 🗖 🔨
	Welcome
6	This wizard performs two functions for an existing meeting registration. It can substitute a different person for the same meeting, or it can transfer a registration to a different meeting.
( 🔊 🧖 )	Step 1: Identify the Registration to Modify
	Enter the person and meeting in the fields provided to locate the order that contains the registration to modify. Or, if you already know the ID of the Order, enter that ID in the field provided.
	Person Tate, Luke/Danube Partners
	Meeting Golf Tournament
	Order A ×
	Cancel Back Next Finish

7. Click the **Next** button.

- 8. Enter Aiesha Baldwin (ID #1) in the New Attendee field.
- 9. Enter the Golf Meeting (ID 9927) in the New Meeting field.
- 10. Select the Line 1 box.

🗡 Meeting Transfer Wizard [Orders ID: 9871   Order Type: Regular   Order Status: Shipped]							
	Step 2: Specify T For an existing mee	ransfer Details ting registration shown in the grid, ide	ntify the new attendee and/or	the new meeting.	When finished, dick Ne:	xt to continue.	
	Current Attendee	Tate, Luke/Danube Partners	-	New Attendee	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danu	be Partners	M ×
	Current Meeting	Golf Tournament	-	New Meeting	Golf Tournament		A ×
							Transfer
	Line Session	n? Meeting	New Meeting	Current At	tendee	New Attendee	
	1	Golf Tournament		Tate, Luke	/Danube Partners		
		Cancel	Back	ext			Finish

- 11. Click the **Transfer** button.
- 12. Click the Next button.
- 13. Click OK at the Credit Card/Credit Memo message.
- 14. Click the Next button.
- 15. Review the Advanced Settings/Payment Reconciliation screen.
  - Users could select a Transfer Fee to apply
  - Users could change the Payment Type or Keep on Account

A Meeting Transfer Wizan	rd [Orders ID: 9872   Order Type: Regular   Order Status: Shipped]							
	Step 3: Advanced Settings and Payment Reconciliation In this step, you can modify advanced settings for the order, including Ship To/Bill To information, as applicable. Also, you can apply a transfer fee and specify payment details to either generate a credit/refund or cover a balance due.							
<b>1</b>	Shipping/Billing Info Ship To Baldwin, Alesha/Danube Partners AX Ship To Company Danube Partners AX							
	Bill To         Baldwin, Alesha/Danube Partners         M         Bill To Company         Danube Partners         M            Taken By         Bob Jones         M         Image: Suppress Confirmation Emails         Image: Suppress Confirmation Emails							
	Transfer Fee (Optional) Original Order Transfer Order							
	Fee Balance \$0.00 Balance \$0.00							
	Balance							
	Payment Type Credit Memo							
	Cancel Back Next	Finish						

- 16. Click Next.
- 17. Click Finish.
- 18. Click Yes at next 2 Ship screens; user shipping both Transfer and Cancellation Orders.
- 19. Click No to sign up other Sessions.
- 20. Click No to Transfer another Person.

# Chapter 15



## Intro to Aptify's Web Interface

Objective	15.1
Spaces	15.3
Use Spaces to Create a Contact Log	15.5
Global Search	15.7
Search for a Persons Record	15.9
Navigating Persons Records	15.10
Order a Membership	15.12
Access a View	15.14
Summary	15.16

## Objective

Aptify web interface allows users to access most Aptify functions through a web browser such as Google Chrome. In addition, it provides many new features that make using Aptify even easier than with the Aptify Desktop client.

In this chapter, you will learn:

- How "Spaces" can be used to quickly perform common tasks and share information
- How Global search can locate views and records across the entire Aptify system
- How to create a new Persons record and place an order for that person

#### **Overview**



Aptify web interface uses HTML5 web-technology to provide users with Aptify access from any device with a web browser and internet connection.

This includes desktop computers, laptops, tablets, or other mobile devices, such as phones. In addition, if a user ever loses internet connectivity, the interface automatically saves the last changes the user made and synchronizes with the Aptify database once the network connection is restored.

## Spaces

"Spaces" in Aptify web interface are the equivalent of a social media newsfeed, where users can see other users' most recent Aptify activity, as well as post their own updates.

Figure 15.2 Aptify web interface Spaces



Spaces also function as a gateway for users to quickly perform common functions, including creating Contact Logs, assigning Tasks, and updating records. Users can even link directly to specific records from within a post, which can save users time locating specific data.



In addition, users can configure their Spaces to notify them if certain events occur. For instance, a user may wish to be notified if their corresponding Persons record is included in another user's post. Notifications appear as an Alert icon with a red box, which indicates the number of events that are unviewed.



Clicking the alert icon displays a drop-down list where the user can select one of the alerts to view the corresponding post. Once the post has been selected, it disappears from the alert list.

Figure 15.5 Viewing Spaces Notifications


### Use Spaces to Create a Contact Log

In this exercise, use a Spaces post to create a Contact Log record and link to the Persons listed in the contact log.

1. Double-click the Aptify web interface shortcut on the desktop.

- A prompt asking for your user name and password appears.
- This information has already been entered and saved on the training computer.
- Normally, if using Windows Integrated Security, you would enter your **Windows** login credentials.

#### 2. Click Log In.

- 3. From the Dashboard, click the Spaces tab.
- 4. Click inside the white text box that reads "What are you up to?"
  - An HTML window appears.

Figure 15.6 Creating a	Enter your update below:	
Spaces Post	BIUA CON E HE CO Q Link Ac	ction 💌
	Add A Tania A Attackmanta	Dublia Cancel
	Add: Topic Attachments	Public  Update Cancel

5. Enter **Spoke to** (*a*) in the window.

- As soon as the @ symbol is entered, a search record text box appears.
- Users can also click the *(a)* Link button to access the search.

6. Enter **Baldwin**, **Aiesha** in the search box.

• A list of matches appears as you type.



7. Click the Aiesha Baldwin result to add it to the post.

#### 8. Enter need to follow up next week #.

- As soon as the # symbol is entered, a list of actions appears.
- Users can also click the **Action** button to access the list.

Figure 15.8 Creating a	Enter your update below:	
Follow Up	Select Action: Create Task Cancel	
	Spoke to 航 Ba	
	Add: Topi	
	Jam Spok Spok K F Mond Write	

9. Click the Calendar button and select next Monday as the follow up date.

10. Enter Answer membership questions in the Description text box, then click Update.

• The new spaces record appears with a link to both Aiesha Baldwin's record and a Contact Log of the scheduled follow up event.

Figure 15.9 Spaces Post

#### James Kirk

Spoke to interventional Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners need to follow up next week #FollowUp C Answer membership questions Just now

Write a reply...

### **Global Search**

In the Aptify Desktop client, users must navigate to a service to search for a specific kind of record; to find Aiesha Baldwin's Persons record, a user would run the find dialog from the Persons service, and the results would only include Persons records. However, Aptify web interface significantly improves search functionality with a Global Search that allows users to locate records from multiple services. By default, these services include Persons, Companies, and Views, but Global Search can be configured to include any service.

Figure 15.10 Global Search Bar

	Search:	All 🔻	Search	<u>s</u>
--	---------	-------	--------	----------

Typing Danube, for instance, could bring up a list of not only Persons who work for Danube Partners, but also any Companies, Orders, or other records that matched, with the results being grouped by record type.

Figure 15.11 Global Search Results



Similarly, searching for a person might bring up the Persons record in addition to their associated Orders and Contact Logs.

Global search also enables users to search for views. Typing in a name of a view locates any matching views that contain the search term. This makes it easy to quickly navigate Aptify and find any data needed.

Figure 15.12 Global Search	Search:	All 🔻	All Persons		<u> </u>	
view Results	Æ		My Views -	2 records		ľ
			All Persons			ŀ
			ID	210		L
			View Type	List View		ľ
			Entity	Persons		L
		1	Owner	sa		
			All Persons With	iin Company		
			ID	576		l
			View Type	List View		þ
		-	Entity	Persons		l
	•		Owner	sa		
					rine arepij	l

Finally, be aware that users can see their search history by clicking the Clock/Magnifying Glass next to the Search Bar, and can search only within a specific Service by first clicking the drop-down arrow next to the search bar, then selecting the desired service.



### **Search for a Persons Record**

In this exercise, use the Global Search feature to locate Aiesha Baldwin's Persons record by searching for her Company, Danube Partners. Then, search again to find the Danube Partners' Companies record.

- 1. Click in the search bar at the top of the screen and enter Danube Partners.
  - A list of results containing both Persons who work for Danube Partners, and Companies records, appears.
- 2. Select Aiesha Baldwin to open her Persons record.
- 3. Click the X on Aiesha Baldwin's Persons record's tab to close her record and return to the dashboard.
- 4. Click the arrow next to the search bar to open a drop-down list.
- 5. Select Companies to search only within the Companies service.
- 6. Click in the search bar and enter Danube Partners.
  - A list of results appears.



7. Select the first Danube Partners Companies record to open it.

### **Navigating Persons Records**

When a Persons record is first opened in the interface, a summary of the person's key information is shown. This includes their membership status, a headshot photograph, and an activity summary, which lists events such as orders and contact logs.

Figure	15.15
- Pe	ersons
R	ecord

Aiesha Marketing Danube R	t Baldwin Per I Senior Director Me Vertners Joi Ter Me	son ID: 1 mbership Status: Active ning Date: mination Date: mbership Type: Non-Memi	per	20 15 10 5 0	January	Open In New Window
Activity Timeline V	of Last 3 Months	•				
Orders 1/2/2014 ID : 9876	<b>Total \$12.00</b> 12oz Sampco Mug	Status : Shipped	Contact Lo 12/30/2013 ID : 6814	ogs Space Action - This contact log	Contact Status : Incorrecord was automatically	omplete gen

To view the rest of a Person record's information, a user must first click Open In Edit Mode to the right of the summary data. From there, the user can see and edit the rest of the record's details. Note that in Aptify web interface, records are organized using a drop-down list, rather than tabs as with the Aptify Desktop client.

Figure 15.16 Person Record Edit Mode	👬 Baldwin, Aie	esha/Danube Pa (ID: 1) ×
	Save 🗽	Save + New X Delete Record History X Refresh More 🔻
	Name	Aiesha     J     Baldwin
	Title Mar	keting Senior Director
	Company Dan	ube Partners
	Memt	ber Type: Non-Member VVeb User
	Comp	bany Member Type: Corporate Member
	📰 Contact 🔻	
	Account Manager	
		Business Address 🔻 🗐
	Line 1	910 Southwest Union Avenue
	Line 2	
	Line 3	
	City, State ZIP	Palo Atto CA 🔻 94301
	County	Santa Clara
	Country	United States    Bad Address
	Pref. Mail Addr.	Business Address
	Pref. Bill Addr.	Business Address
	Pref. Ship Addr.	Business Address
		Primary Email 🔹 Aiesha.Baldwin@demodata.aptify.com
		Phone T
		1 650 750-9187 ×

To see the various types of information, such as related Orders or Committees, click the arrow next to the Contact header, then select a category.

Figure 15.17 Person Tab Selection	👬 Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Pa	. (ID: 1) ×						
	Save 🛛 🙀 Save + New 💙	K Delete	🔹 Refresh More 💌					
	Name Aiesha Title Marketing Senior Director Company Danube Partners	J Baldwin						
	Member Type: Non-Member Corporate Member Web User							
	📰 Contact 🔻							
	📰 Contact	🗞 Membership	🍅 Analysis					
	🗿 Details	🔒 Functions	Contact Count By Year/Category					
	General     Sersonal	📞 Contact Log						
	Education	😮 Incomplete	Awarus     Airtures					
	🔥 Companies 🍱 Relationships	0rders	Comments					
	Lists	Subscriptions	n Attachments					
	🞦 Topic Codes	🛗 Meetings	😹 Activity Timeline					
	Saved Payment Methods	🖧 Committees						
	<ul> <li>Relationships</li> </ul>							
	pp360tab							
	1 650 750-918	37 X						

### **Order a Membership**

In this exercise, locate Aiesha Baldwin's Persons record, then open the record in Edit Mode to place an order for an Individual Membership.

- 1. Click the arrow next to the search bar and select Persons.
- 2. Click in the search bar and enter 1.
  - This the ID for Aiesha Baldwin's Persons record.
- 3. Select Aiesha Baldwin's record from the list of results.

#### 4. Click Open In Edit Mode.

- This displays additional Person information and allows the record to be modified.
- 5. Click the arrow next to Contact.
  - A list of options, corresponding to record tabs in the Aptify Desktop client, appears.

### 6. Select Orders.

Figure 15.18 Persons Orders Tab	0 [	rders	•									
	1	Order	Total		Balance Total \$525.00							
	[ 🕄 🖸	Orders V										
	Orders for Aiesha Baldwin											
	P				More 💌							
			ID	Order Date	Line1_ProductName	Grand Total	Balance	Order Status				
	•		4286	03/30/2010 09:23:45 PM	Individual Membership	\$525.00	\$525.00	Taken	*			
	•		9876	01/02/2014	12oz Sampco Mug	\$12.00	\$0.00	Shipped				
									Ŧ			
			1	$\mathbf{O}$				1 - 2 of 2 items	Q			

7. Under Orders for Aiesha Baldwin, click New Record.

- 8. Click in the Find Product field, enter Individual Membership, and click Add.
  - The product appears on the order line.

Figure 15.19	Baldwin Alasha/Danuha Ba (ID:1) X 🖻 New Orders Banard X										
Adding a											
Order	Grand Save + New Record History More 💌										
	Order Entry-Baldwin, Alesha/Danube Partners										
	🗞 Customer 🔻										
	Order Date 1/6/14										
	Ship To Address V										
	Ship To Company Danube Partners										
	Image: Strategy and the strategy and strategy and strategy and the strategy and the strategy and the s										
	Bill To Baldwin, AleshaDanube Partners										
	Bill To Company Danube Partners										
	Customer Type: Corporate Member/Not Country United States V Bad Address										
	Campaign Q S Shin To Phone V										
	Ship Type U.S. Mail										
	Order Source Walk-In										
	Payment & Summary Order Total : \$250.00										
	Find Product         Quantity 1         Qty Avail:         Add         Clear Search         Delete All										
	Individual Membership (D: 2)         Description Individual Sub: 1. Start: (2) # Copies:         Quantity         Price         Discount         Extended           \$250.00         0.00 %         \$250.00         0.00 %         \$250.00         Price         Price<										
	•										

9. Click the Payment & Summary heading to expand the payment area.

10. Click in the PO Number field and enter 123456.



- 11. Click Save.
- 12. Click Wade/Alexandra in the Ship To field to return to her record.
- 13. Click Refresh.
  - Observe Alexandra Wade is now a Corporate Member.

### Access a View

In this exercise, search for and open the San Francisco Student Members view created in the Views chapter.

1. Click in the search bar at the top of the screen and enter San Francisco.

- 2. Select the San Francisco Student Members result.
  - Observe the view contains the same settings that were used in the Aptify Desktop client.

it. San	San I	Francisco Stu	udent Membe	ers X				
<b>9</b>			× 🔹	More 💌				
	ID	First Name	Last Name	Company	Title	Member Type	Member Type	Department
	48	Wainwright	Jackson	Let's Stop N Shop	Advertising Associate	Student Member	Corporate Member	
	90	Quillan	Byrd	Cottonwood Taping Systems	Customer Support Senior VP	Student Member	Corporate Member	
	390	John	Jackson	Let's Stop N Shop	Director, Finance	Student Member	Corporate Member	
	1339	Andrew	Walker	Bechtel Group, Inc.	Sales Executive VP	Student Member	Corporate Member	
	1458	Reginald	Robinson	Cottonwood Taping Systems	Manager, Consulting Services	Student Member	Corporate Member	
	1758	Mason	Lowe	Let's Stop N Shop	Manager, Research	Student Member	Corporate Member	
	2100	Brian	Jones	Let's Stop N Shop	VP, Engineering	Student Member	Corporate Member	

Figure 15.21 Aptify web interface List View

- Figure 15.22 Accessing View 👬 San Francisco Student Members 🛛 🗴 Properties San Francisco Student Members 9 ٩ More 🔍 🤝 x Record History Last Name C ID First Name 📧 Export to Excel 48 Wainwright Jackson ٨s Lε Quillan 90 Byrd C pp ۲. Reports 390 John Jackson L and Preview 1339 Andrew Walker Ð :ive Add To List P 1458 Reginald Robinson C ns Add To Favorites প্ল 1758 Mason Lowe Lε Auto-Resize Columns ĸ 📄 2100 Brian Jones L ing Messaging  $\geq$ 4 Record Merge ..... Properties 2 Add Persons To Committee Wizard 😨 Add Persons To Campaign
- 3. Note that users can edit the view's filters and other settings by clicking **More** and then selecting **Properties**.

### Summary

- Access Aptify web interface from laptops, tablets or other mobile devices
- Use Spaces to keep your organization up-to-date on Aptify activity
- Take advantage of Global Search to easily find any type of record
- Open Persons records in Edit Mode to see all of their information

# Appendix







Objective	A.1
Defining Award Types	A.2
Tracking Award Nominations	A.3
Tracking Awards and Incentives	A.5

### Objective

Users will be able to:

- Nominate Persons for Awards
- Track Awards from inception to conclusion

### **Overview**

Many organizations offer incentives and awards to their employees and members. The Awards application allows organizations to track various awards and incentives programs. The application includes the ability to create many awards programs, to track awards nominees and finally to represent recipients of awards. Common programs include:

- Committee Years of Service Pins (and similar awards) ٠
- Employee of the Month ٠
- Sales Team Incentive Tracking ٠

### **Defining Award Types**

Before an organization can begin tracking awards in Aptify, the types of awards and incentives that will be offered by the organization must be defined. The Award Types record tracks the name of the award as well as description of the award type. Follow these steps to create a new award type:

- 1. Open a new record from the Award Types service.
  - The Award Types service is located in the Award Management application.
- 2. Enter Innovation in the name of the award in the Award Type field.
- 3. Enter **Test** the **Description** field.

Figure A.23 Award Types Record	🗡 Award Types ID: 7
	🔜 🔩 🍇 🗙 📺 🛗 🔚 📑 🦃 🇞 🖘 👘 🎭 🎲 🖛 🔗 🍥 🍹
	General Attachments
	Award Type Innovation
	Description

4. Save and close the record.

### **Tracking Award Nominations**

Aptify's Award Management application includes the Awards Nomination service that can be used to track the award nomination process. The Awards Nomination service is for tracking. By default, the system does **NOT** automatically convert a nomination to award.

### Nominating a Person for an Award

The Awards Nomination record tracks the nomination process. Persons can be nominated for an award by another person or the person can apply for the incentive themselves depending on the organization's award practices.

- 1. Open a new record from the Awards Nomination service.
- 2. Select the Innovation award created earlier from the Award Type drop-down list.
- 3. Enter your Persons ID in the Person Nominated field.
- 4. Enter Dalton Brown in the Nominated By field.
- 5. Enter the date on which the nomination was received in the Nomination Date field.
- 6. Keep **Pending** as the current status of the nomination from the **Status** drop-down list. Pending is selected by default. Once a person has been added as an award nominee, you can add more information or modify the person's nomination status at any time as necessary during the nomination process. The available Status types are as follows:
  - **Pending** Selected by default. The process is pending, no decision made yet.
  - Approved Nominee has been accepted to receive specified award/incentive.
  - **Rejected** The nominee will not receive the specified award or incentive.
- 7. Enter Test in the Description field.
- 8. Save the record.

🗡 Awards Nomination ID: 1							
🔜 🔩 🐴 🗙 💼 🛗 🖆 💷 🐎 🗞 🖦 🦙 🎭 😳 💷 🔗 🎯 🍟							
General Attachmen	ts						
Award Type	Innovation		~				
Person Nominated	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	A	×				
Nominated By	Wade, Alexandra/U. Hardwick Physics AB	A	×				
Nomination Date	7/1/2008						
Status	Pending 🗸						
Description	Alexandra Wade nominates Aiesha Baldwin for Innovation Award.		~				

### **Tracking Awards and Incentives**

The Awards Granted service can be used to track awards and incentives given out by an organization. A record in this service tracks information such as the type of awards given, the recipient or recipients, the location of award ceremony, etc.

- 1. Open a new Awards Granted record with one of the following methods:
  - Open a new record from the Awards Granted service.
  - Open a new record from the Awards tab on a Persons record.
- 2. Select the Nomination award from the Award Type drop-down list.
- 3. Enter Edward Aaronson in the Person Awarded field.
- 4. Enter today's date in the Date Achieved field.
- 5. This award is the result of an accepted nomination; link the corresponding nomination to the award by specifying the previously created record in the **Award Nomination** field.
  - If this award was for more than one person, you could specify a second winner in the **Second Person Awarded** field.
- 6. Enter HQ in the Award Ceremony Location field.
- 7. Enter Cash in the Other Benefit Provided field.
- 8. Enter Car in the Other Benefit Details field.
- 9. Enter Memento in the Memento Type field.
- 10. Enter Solid Gold in the Memento Type Details field.

<b>∧ New Awards (</b>	iranted Record	
🔜 😼 🔩 📄 🕅 😭 (	i 🐎 🗞 🖦 🐄 🍢 😯 🛟 🕶 🔗 🛞 🖕	
Award Type	Innovation	~
Person Awarded	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	$\mathbb{A}$ $\times$
Date Achieved	8/1/2008 Award Nomination 1	$\mathbb{A}$ $\times$
Second Person Awarded		$\mathbb{A} \times$
General Description 🌉	Pictures Attachments	
Award Ceremony Location	Grand Hall at Washington Hotel	
Other Benefit Provided	Trip Awarded	
Other Benefit Details	All expense paid trip to annual conference.	
Memento Type	Plaque	
Memento Type Details	Commerorative Plaque	~
		~

- 11. Click the **Description** tab and add additional details about the award being grant or about the recipient(s).
- 12. Save the record.

# Appendix



# B

# Sales Force Automation

Objective	. B.1
Creating Opportunities Records	. B.2

## Objective

Users will be able to:

- Create Opportunities Records
- Track Opportunities

### Overview

Organizations have a growing need to support contact management and opportunity tracking related to their prospective customers. The SFA application is designed to bring an integrated approach to tracking the lead generation process to their CMS/AMS system. In addition, many organizations employ inside sales team members. Features like Call Scripting are central to ensuring a common message.

### **Creating Opportunities Records**

- 1. Bring over the Sales Force Automation application.
- 1. Open a New Record from the Opportunities service.
- 2. Enter XYZ Opportunity in the Name field.
- 3. Select General from the Type drop-down list.
- 4. Enter yourself as the primary contact for this opportunity in the Account Manager field.
- 5. Enter a name for the primary contact person for this opportunity in the Person field.
- 6. Enter your XYZ Company as the name of the prospect in the Company field.

💏 New Opportunities Reco	rd	<u>_</u> _×
🛃 😼 🔩 💼 🕅 🕁 🗉	🐎 🗞 🖦 🎥 🐝 🔅 🕶 🔗 🛞 🖕	
Name	XYZ Opportunity	
Туре	General	
<u>Campaign</u>		<b>₩</b> ×
Parent		<b>₩</b> ×
Account Manager	Dave O'Connell	<b>*</b> ×
Person	Aaronson, Edward/Danube Partners	<b>*</b> ×
Company	XYZ Corporation	M ×
🚸 Competitors 📑 Sub-Op Status 🦪 Details 😂 Con	portunities   Status Reports   🙀 Roles   🍚 Comments   Attach tacts   🐲 Contact Log   🏢 Line Items   嬌 History   Partners	ments A References
Requested On 2	/17/2009	
Proposal Sent On		
Expected Decision Date 2	/20/2009	
Actual Decision Date		
Status O	pen 💽 Stage Raw Lead	-
Source D	irect Mail	<b>₩</b> ×
Acceptance Probability % 5	0 Manager Acceptance Probability 50	

- 7. Enter today's date in the Requested On field
- 8. Enter the date three days from today in the Expected Decision Date
- 9. Look at the options for the Status, Stage, and Source fields, but keep the defaults.
- 10. Click on the Details tab

🚸 Competitors 📷 S Status 🦪 Details 🔒	iub-Opportunities   Status Reports   👯 Roles   📄 Comments   Attachments   🖹 Contacts   🐲 Contact Log   🏢 Line Items   🏹 History   Partners   🙈 References	
Requested	On 2/17/2009	×
Detail Level	Category	
Commission Percent	100 Override Commission Percent	
Lost To	<u>A</u>	×
Prior Opportunity	<u>84</u>	×
Next Proposal	A	×
Confidentiality Level Confidentiality Comments	None	

- 11. Observe the Details fields, especially the **Commission Percent** and **Confidentiality** Level fields
- 12. Return to the **Details** tab
- 13. Change the Status to On Hold
- 14. Open up the History Tab
- 15. Observe: the Status change history is recorded under this tab.

- 16. Click on the Line Items tab
- 17. Open a new Line Item
- 18. The Line Items tab stores information about the set of goods and/or services being offered to the prospect in the opportunity's proposal. In other words, this tab stores the items that the organization is actively selling to the prospect as a solution to the requirements specified in the prospect's RFP (Request for Proposal).

💏 Opportunities ID: 2681				
😼 😼 🐴 🗙 📋 🕅 🚞	i 🗉 🐘 🗞 💷	। 🖥 🖣 😯 🔅 । 🕫 🖉 🕕	Ţ	
Name	XYZ Opportunity			
Туре	General		-	
<u>Campaign</u>			X	
Parent			$\mathbf{A}$ $\mathbf{X}$	
Account Manager	Dave O'Connell		X	
Person	Aaronson, Edward	/Danube Partners	X	
<u>Company</u>	XYZ Corporation		X	
🔖 Competitors 🔐 Sub-Op Status 🦪 Details 😂 Cont	portunities   Status acts   獅 Contact I	Reports 🗱 Roles 🍛 Comments At .og 🔟 Line Items 🦙 History Partne	tachments	ences
🖹 📸 🗙 🛛 🛗 Find 🛛 🕯	• • • • •	0		
Product Product Ca Lin	e Items Record			
	General 🎑 Comm	ents		
	Product			$\mathbf{A}$
	Product Category			X
	Min. Amount	\$0.00		
	Est. Amount	\$0.00		
	Max Amount	\$0.00		
	Manager Amount	\$0.00		
			ОК	Cancel

- 19. Save the record
- 20. Click on the Competitors Tab

- 21. The Competitors record tracks information about any known companies competing for a particular opportunity.
- 22. Add a New Competitor's Record
- 23. Observe the fields available to track your competition:

- 12		
Competitors Record		
General 🎑 Commer	Its	
	-	1
Competitor		$\mathbb{A}$
Sales Person		$\mathbb{A}$ $\times$
Description		
Reseller ID		$\mathbf{H}$
Status	Active	•
Rank		•
Probability	0	
	🗌 Lost To	
LostToReason		-
	OK	Cancel

24. Save and Close the Record.

# Chapter

C



# Accounting and Batching

Accounting Information	C.1
Batching C	C.2
Creating an Orders Batch	C.3
Creating a Payments Batch	C.8
Expanding a Scheduled Transaction Group C	C.11
Cash Control Batches C	C.16

## **Accounting Information**

### **Financial Management Features**

- Tracks General Ledger (GL) accounts
- Creates GL entries for orders and payments
- Includes Cash Control management
- Integrates with VeriSign Payflow Pro for credit card authorization and payment captures
- Supports multi-entity accounting between parent organization and subsidiaries
- Supports multiple currencies

## Batching

General Ledger (GL) Batches in Aptify are used to transfer the GL Entry information from the Orders, Payments, and Scheduled Transactions services to the organization's accounting system. The Batch is designed to sum the individual entries in multiple orders, payments, or scheduled transactions. Batches can sum up any number of orders, payments, or scheduled transactions but can not include more than one type of record. For this reason, four batch types exist. They are **Order Batches**, **Payment Batches**, **Scheduled Transaction Batches**, **and Cash Control Batches**.

### **GL Batching:**

- · Aggregates all individual GL entries form the records into one ledger entry
- A single GL batch includes records of the same type and the same currency
  - If using multiple currencies, one General Ledger batch is created for each currency type
- Once batched, a record's financial fields cannot be modified
  - This maintains integrity between Aptify and the Accounting system
  - The General Ledger batch number appears on the record
  - General Ledger Batch records contain GL entries that can be exported to your organization's financial system
- During the order batching process, Aptify automatically adjusts a product's inventory count as necessary

In this section, you will learn how to:

- Create an Orders Batch
- Create a Payments Batch
- Expand Scheduled Transaction Groups
- Create a Scheduled Transaction Batch

### **Creating an Orders Batch**

Order Batches are used to transfer the GL Entries from a set of shipped orders to the accounting system.

- 1. Open a view of orders that you have created that are in a Shipped status.
  - If you do not have one already, you can create a view that displays only the orders where the Taken By field shows your Employees record. You can also ask your instructor for assistance constructing this type of view.
- 2. Right click within the view and select **Order Options** > **Create Order Batch** from the pop-up list.

Figure C.1 Create Order	B	6	X   🔚 📊 R	eports 🕌 📲	Add To List		B 💲 📚 🕫	<b>5</b>	1 🔚		
Batch	My	/ Ore	ders Shipp	bed							
		ID	Order Date	Order Status	ShipToCor	mpany	ShipToName	) Addr	o To C i To S	t "o Zip	BillToCompany
		9859	2/10/2009	Shipped	Danube Pa	New P	ecord		rl+N	94301	Danube Partners
		9860	2/10/2009	Shipped	Danube Pa	Oper	Record	0		94301	Danube Partners
		9861	2/10/2009	Shipped	Danube Pa	oper	Rocord			94301	Danube Partners
		9870	2/11/2009	Shipped	Spécialités	Deleti	e	De	el 🛛	7501 <i>€</i>	Spécialités du mondi
		9871	2/11/2009	Shipped	Kumpulan (	Order	s Options		•	Mark as	Shipped
		9872	2/11/2009	Shipped	Hanari Car					Create	Back Orders
		9873	2/11/2009	Shipped	Hanari Car	Add t	o List	Ct	rl+A		
		9874	2/11/2009	Shipped	The Ohio S	Repo	rt Wizard	Ct	rl+R	Create	Order Batch
		9875	2/11/2009	Shipped	The Ohio S	Print I	Record		Н	43210	The Ohio State Uni
		9876	2/11/2009	Shipped	The Ohio S	Print '	View		н	43210	The Ohio State Univ
		9877	2/11/2009	Shipped	The Ohio S		· · ·		1	43210	The Ohio State Univ
		9879	2/12/2009	Shipped	Laughing B	Messa	aging	C	ri+M	V3F 2	Laughing Bacchus W
		9881	2/12/2009	Shipped	Marriott In	Recor	rd History	Ct	rl+H [	20058	Marriott Internation
		9882	2/12/2009	Shipped	Danube Pa	Refre	sh	F5	i 1	94301	Danube Partners
		9883	2/12/2009	Shipped	Marriott In	View I	Properties	F8	:	20058	Marriott Internation
		9884	2/15/2009	Shipped	Franchi S.p	Clear	Record Selection			10100	Franchi S.p.A.
		9885	2/15/2009	Shipped	Ottoman	Select	t All			29730	Ottoman
		9886	2/15/2009	Shipped	Furia Bacal	Send	То		•	1675	Furia Bacalhau e Fru
		9887	2/15/2009	Shipped	Ottoman	Find i	n ShipToCompany	Ct	rl+F	29730	Ottoman
		9888	2/15/2009	Shipped	Danube Pa	Find A	Again in ShipToComp	any F3		94301	Danube Partners
		9889	2/15/2009	Shipped	Danube Par	tners	Edward Aaronson	910 S	Palo / CA	94301	Danube Partners
		9890	2/15/2009	Shipped	Danube Par	tners	Edward Aaronson	910 S	Palo 4 CA	94301	Danube Partners

3. Read the introduction on the first screen of the **Aptify Batch Wizard -- Orders** and click **Next** to continue.



- 4. The wizard reports the number of records that qualify for the batch and the number of records that do not qualify.
  - Only orders that have shipped and have not been previously batched qualify.
  - To view the list of included or excluded orders, click in the **Details** field and click the button that appears.

Figure C.3 Review	Aptify Batch Wizard					×
Records for Batching		Step 1: Review Batches Grouped By S The grid displays the batches that will be cr created for each currency. To review the c	ource Record ( eated based on etails of each ba	E <b>urrency</b> the data in the tch, click on the Excluded	view. A separate batch mus e ellipses button. Detai	tbe
		US Dollar (US Dollar)	22	0	Details	
		Cancel	iack	Next		Finish

5. Click **Next** to continue.

Figure C.4 Batch Summary GL Entries

- 6. Review the instructions for Step 2: Generate Order GL Entries and click Next.
  - Do not select the **Regenerate Entries** checkbox.
  - Depending on the number of orders in the batch, it may take an extended amount of time to complete the regeneration process.
  - In most cases, you do not need to regenerates the entries before batching orders. In general, you should only regenerate entries if you made changes to the system's GL accounts since the orders you are batching were created.
- 7. Click Next to continue.
  - The wizard displays the debit and credit totals for the orders in the batch.
- 8. Click in the **Details** field and click the button that appears to review the Batch Summary GL Entries.

ø	Batch Summary GL Entries					
Г	GL Account	Description	Debit	Credit	Weighted Avg Spot Rate 🔒	
Þ	1101	Accounts Receivable	\$55,530.64	0		
Г	4401	Sales Discounts	\$10,664.26	0		
	5950	Cost of Goods Sold	\$378.35	0		
Г	5951	Furniture COGS	\$224.30	0		
	4006	Furniture Sales Account	0	\$38,200.00		
	2901	Deferred Income	0	\$12,847.00		
	4008	Exhibit Sales	0	\$6,200.00		
	4002	Meeting Sales	0	\$5,600.00	<b></b>	
Ŀ					<u> </u>	
12	! Items	Totals:	\$66,797.55	\$66,797.55	ОК	

- 9. Click **OK** to close the summary screen.
- 10. Select the Approval checkbox.

Figure C.5 Approve Batch	Aptify Batch Wizard					X		
		Step 3: Review Summary GL Entries: The following GL Entries summarize the entries for all Orders batches. After reviewing the GL activity, click on the 'Approve GL Entries' checkboxes in the grid and proceed to the next step.						
		Currency (Func. Currency)	Debit	Credit	Effective Date Ap	protal Details		
		🔰 US Dollar (US Dollar)	\$66,797.55	\$66,797.55	2/16/2009 5:51:15 PM	Details		
		Cancel	Back	Next		Finish		

- 11. Click Next to continue.
- 12. Click in the **Batch Name** field and add your initials to the beginning of the batch name.

Figure C.6 Modify Batch	Aptify Batch Wizard					×	
Name		Step 4: Create Batch Record You have completed the steps for creating the following batches. You may change the batch name if desired.Click on Finish to generate the new batch record.					
		Functional Currency	Currency	$\frown$	Batch Name		
		🔰 US Dollar	US Dollar	XYZ Orcers Batch (U	S Dollar) - 2/16/2009 5:51:15 PM		
			Cancel E	Back Next		Finish	

- 13. Click Finish.
  - The Batch Results window appears and reports the ID for the batch you just created.
  - You can also double-click an entry to export the batch results to a file. By default, Aptify supports exporting the results to a CSV (Comma Delimited) file.
- 14. Write down the Batch ID here: \_\_\_\_.
- 15. Click **OK** to close the wizard.
- 16. Open the first record in the My Orders view.
  - Note that the Batch ID now appears under Customer Type.

### Accounting and Batching

Figure C.7	
Batch ID on	
Orders Form	
	🖉 Customer 🖳 Payment 🛛 😸 Shipping 🙆 Accounting 🗞 Cancellations 🕐 Back Orders 🖳 Subscriptions 🎡 Comments 🛛 Attachments
	Order Date 1/9/2010 9:28:33 P 📖 🗸 Ship To Address 🗸 🗈 🐼 📾
	Ship To Lee, Nadia/Laughing Bacchus Wine Cellar 🔺 🗙 👦 - Line 1 1900 Oak St.
	Ship To Company Laughing Bacchus Wine Cellars
	Billing Same as Shipping
	Bill To Lee, Nadia/Laughing Bacchus Wine Cellar 🕅 🗙 City, State ZIP Vancouver BC 🔽 V3F 2K1
	Bill To Company Laughing Bacchus Wine Cellars
	Taken By Tim Jones A X Country Canada
	Sales Rep Ship To Phone 🗸 🗈
	nec V
	Find Product Quantity 1 Add
	Line Type Product Product Description Quantity Price Discount Extended
	1 📶 53 Rectangular Conference Table Rectangular Conference Table 3.0000 \$3,500.00 15.0000 \$8,925.00
	Ammany Ammany
	Order Source Walk-In Costonier Type: Corporate Member/Non-Member
	Currency Type US Dollar \$1.15 PM1 Shipping \$0.00 ()
	Order Type Kegular Cancellation Reason (N/A) Handling \$0.00 ()
	Order Status Iphipped Ship Partial Order Level Regular Tax \$0.00 (1)
	Original Order Total \$8,925.00
	Urganization Paintico molunings, Inc. m X Balance \$0.00

17. Close the record.

### **Creating a Payments Batch**

- 1. *Right click* the **Payments** service select **Create View** from the pop-up list.
- 2. Enter My Payments in the Name field.
- 3. Click the **Filters** tab.
- 4. Add the following filter:
  - Service: Payments
  - Field: EmployeeID
  - Operator: =
  - Value: The ID number of the Employees record that is linked to your user account. Ask your instructor if you need assistance identifying this number.
- 5. Click **OK** to save and open the view.
  - The view displays all of the Payments records for which your Employee ID appears in the Taken By field.
- 6. *Right click* within the view and select **Payment Options** > **Create Payment Batch** from the pop-up list.

Create	My	y Pa	yments			
Payment Batch		ID	PaidBy			CompanyName
		3852	Edward Aaronson		Danube Partn	ers
		3853	Edward Aaronson		Danube Partn	ers
		3854	Edward Aaronson		Danube Partn	ers
		3855	Yale Wade	New Record	Ctrl+N	
		3856	Fabian Aaronson	Open Record	Ctrl+O	
		3857	John Aaronson			urante
		3858	Edward Aaronson	Delete	Del	ers
		3860	John Jensen	Payments Options	۰,	Create Payments Batch
		3861	John Jensen	Mayao Decayda		Capture Electronic Payments
		3862	Ian Miller	Merge Records	Christa	hrie Berhad
		3863	Carlos Baldwin		CUITA	
		3864	Spencer King	Report Wizard	Ctrl+R	hus Wine Cellars
		3865	Fabian Aaronson	Print Record		
		3866	Pablo Harris	Print View		
				Record History	Ctrl+H	
				Object Viewer		
				Refresh	F5	
				View Properties	F8	
				Clear Record Selection	n	
				Select All		
				Send To	<u> </u>	
				Find in PaidBy	Ctrl+F	
				Find Again in PaidBy	F3	

7. Read the introduction on the first screen of the **Aptify Batch Wizard -- Payments** and click **Next** to continue.

- 8. The wizard reports the number of records that qualify for the batch and the number of records that do not qualify.
  - Payments that have already been batched are excluded from the batch process.
  - To view the list of included or excluded payments, click in the **Details** field and click the button that appears.
- 9. Click Next to continue.
- 10. Review the instructions for Step 2: Generate Payment GL Entries and click Next.
  - Do not select the **Regenerate Entries** checkbox.
  - In most cases, you do not need to regenerates the entries before batching payments. In general, you should only regenerate entries if you made changes to the system's GL accounts since the payments you are batching were created.
- 11. Click Next to continue.
  - The wizard displays the debit and credit totals for the payments in the batch.
- 12. Click in the **Details** field and click the button that appears to review the Batch Summary GL Entries.
- 13. Click **OK** to close the summary screen.
- 14. Select the Approval checkbox.
- 15. Click Next to continue.

- 16. Click in the **Batch Name** field and add your initials to the beginning of the batch name.
- 17. Click Finish.
  - The Batch Results window appears and reports the ID for the batch you just created.
  - You can also double-click an entry to export the batch results to a file. By default, Aptify supports exporting the results to a CSV (Comma Delimited) file.
- 18. Write down the Batch ID here: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 19. Click **OK** to close the wizard.
- 20. Open the first record in the My Payments view.
  - Note that the Batch ID now appears at the bottom of the Payments record.

Figure C.9 Batch ID on	👔 Payments ID: 3854	_ 🗆 🗙
Payments Form	😡 🍕 🗙 📺 🛗 🖆 💷 🦃 🎯 🗣 🧤 🐄 🎲 🖘 🚳 🌒 🖕	
	Taken By Dave O'Connell M X Organization Sampco Holdings, Inc.	Ж×
	Person Aaronson, Edward/Danube Partners	
	Company Danube Partners A Corder Search Order # Invoice #	
	Payment Lines Details Authorizations GL Entries AP Integration Comments	
	🖹 💕 🗙 🛱 Find i 🚡 🎓 🐥 💆 🔞	
	Order Applies To Is Tax Order Line # Amount Payment Amount Comments	
		4.7
		1 Item
	Batch ID: 3 (2/17/2009 9:52:41 AM) Total \$400.00	

21. Close the record.

### **Expanding a Scheduled Transaction Group**

The **Scheduled Transaction Groups** service exists for performance reasons. Since a single order could require a substantial number of Scheduled Transactions records to be created in order to recognize revenue over a long earn-out period, generating all the Scheduled Transactions records at the time the order is shipped could place a substantial load on the system.

The process of generating the actual Scheduled Transactions records from the Scheduled Transaction Groups record is known as **Expanding Scheduled Transaction Groups**. The process may be invoked at any time by choosing the Expand Scheduled Transaction Groups icon from the toolbar in any Scheduled Transaction Groups view.

**Note:** Aptify recommends that Scheduled Transaction Group expansion occur after hours, since the process may be resource intensive (depending on how many groups you are expanding). Create or open a view of the Products service.

- 1. Open your XYZ Subscription record (or the ID of another subscription product).
- 2. Write down the **Product ID** here:



- 3. Close the record.
- 4. *Right click* the **Scheduled Transaction Groups** service and select **Create View** from the pop-up list.
  - Scheduled Transaction Groups is located under the Accounting application.
- 5. Enter *XYZ* STG in the Name field (where *XYZ* are your initials).
- 6. Click the **Filters** tab.
- 7. Add the following filter:
  - Service: Scheduled Transaction Groups
  - Field: ProductID
  - Operator: =
  - Value: The ID number of Subscription product (which you wrote down in Step 3).
- 8. Click **OK** to save and open the view.
  - The view displays all of the Scheduled Transaction Groups records related to subscription product.

- 9. Click the Expand Scheduled Transaction Groups button.
  - Alternatively, you can *right click* within the view and select Scheduled Transaction Groups Options > Expand Scheduled Transaction Groups from the pop-up list.

Figure C.11
Expand
Scheduled
Transactions
Groups
Groups

B XY	🖹 💕 🗙 🔚 Reports 👗 📲 Add To List 🗐 💲 😱 XYZ STG Expand Scheduled Transaction Groups						
	ID	Order	Start Date	Gross Revenue	Discount Amount	Status	
	2754	9870	2/11/2009	39.95	0.00	Pendir	
	2755	9871	2/11/2009	119.85	0.00	Pendir	
	2756	9872	2/11/2009	39.95	0.00	Pendir	
	2757	9873	2/11/2009	-39.95	0.00	Pendir	
	2758	9874	2/11/2009	39.95	0.00	Pendir	
	2759	9876	2/11/2010	39.95	0.00	Pendir	
	2760	9875	2/11/2009	-39.95	0.00	Pendir	
	2761	9877	8/11/2010	-19.98	0.00	Pendir	
	2762	9879	2/12/2009	39.95	0.00	Pendir	

10. Click OK to expand all pending Scheduled Transaction Groups.



E

vhaun ac	
?	All pending Scheduled Transaction Group records in this view will be expanded. Note: Group records must be linked to shipped orders to be expanded. Do you wish to proceed?
	Yes No

- 11. Be patient while the Scheduled Transaction Groups are expanded. Click **OK** when prompted that the process is complete.
- 12. Click the Refresh button on the Scheduled Transaction Groups View Toolbar.
  - Note that the Status changes from Pending to Complete.
  - Close the View
#### **Creating a Scheduled Transactions Batch**

- 1. *Right click* the Scheduled Transactions service (under the **Accounting** application) and select **Create View** from the pop-up list.
- 2. Enter XYZ Transactions in the Name field (where XYZ are your initials).
- 3. Click the Filters tab.
- 4. Add the following filter:
  - Service: Products
  - Field: ID
  - Operator: =
  - Value: The ID number of the XYZ Subscription product
  - Click **OK** twice to save and open the view.
- 5. Click **OK** to load the view.
- 6. Click the **Create Scheduled Transaction Batch** icon in the view toolbar to launch the Batch wizard.

Figure C.13 Create Scheduled Transactions Batch

B V	🖹 🧭 🗙   🔙 📊 Reports 🕌   🏭 Add To List 🖄   💲 🔲					
~ 1	2 (			Create Scheduled Transacti	on Batch	
4	ID	Scheduled Date	Description		туре	Orger
	354	2/11/2009	February 2009 reco	Deferred Income		9870
	355	3/11/2009	March 2009 recognil	Deferred Income		9870
	356	4/11/2009	April 2009 recognitic	Deferred Income		9870
	357	5/11/2009	May 2009 recognitic	Deferred Income		9870
	358	6/11/2009	June 2009 recogniti	Deferred Income		9870
	359	7/11/2009	July 2009 recognitio	Deferred Income		9870
	360	8/11/2009	August 2009 recogn	Deferred Income		9870
	361	9/11/2009	September 2009 rec	Deferred Income		9870

- 7. Read the introduction on the first screen of the **Aptify Batch Wizard -- Scheduled Transactions** and click **Next** to continue.
- 8. The wizard reports the number of records that qualify for the batch and the number of records that do not qualify.
  - Transactions that have already been batched are excluded from the batch process.
  - To view the list of included or excluded transactions, click in the **Details** field and click the button that appears.

- 9. Click Next to continue.
- 10. Click **Next** to expand any pending Scheduled Transactions Group and compile the relevant GL entries.

Figure C.14 Expand	Aptify Batch Wizard						
Scheduled Transaction Groups Step (if necessary)		Step 2: Expand Scheduled Transaction Groups All Scheduled Transaction Group records must be expanded prior to batching scheduled transactions. This is necessary to ensure data consistency. There are currently 1475 pending scheduled transaction groups in the system.Note: Depending on the number of open scheduled transaction groups in the system, the process may take an extended amount of time to complete. You will have the opportunity to cancel the process, but the batch cannot be completed until all scheduled transaction group records are expanded.					
		Cancel Back Next Finish					

- 11. The wizard displays the debit and credit totals for the transactions in the batch.
- 12. Click in **Details** field and click button that appears to review Batch Summary GL Entries.
- 13. Click **OK** to close the summary screen.
- 14. Select the Approval checkbox.
- 15. Click Next to continue.

- 16. Click in the **Batch Name** field and add your initials to the beginning of the batch name.
- 17. Click Finish.
  - The Batch Results window appears and reports the ID for batch you just created.
  - You can also double-click an entry to export the batch results to a file. By default, Aptify supports exporting the results to a CSV (Comma Delimited) file.
- 18. Write down the Batch ID here:
- 19. Click **OK** to close the wizard.
- 20. Open the first record in your Scheduled Transactions view.
  - Note the Batch ID now appears at the top of the Scheduled Transactions record.

Figure C.15 Batch ID on	🐮 Scheduled Transa	ctions ID: 25360	
Scheduled Transactions Form	🚽 🔩 🔩 🗙 📋	# 🖆 🗉 i 🏷 🚱 🔤 🍟 🏀 🗧	ç 🖛 🔊 💿 🕕 📮
	Scheduled Date 8/11/2	2009	Batch ID: 4
	Description Augus	t 2009 recognition of 1/12 of XYZ Subscription	n revenue.
	Type Defer	red Income Source Order	<u>9870</u>
	Organization Samp	to Holdings, Inc.	×
	Currency US Do	llar 🔐	×
	GL Entries Comment:	•	
	🖹 🎯 🗙 🕅 Fi	nd 🚡 🏚 🤑 🚇 🞯	
	GL Account Debi	t Amount Credit Amount \$3.33	\$0.00
	4003	\$0.00	\$3.33
			2 Items
		Totals:	\$3.33 \$3.33

21. Close the record.

## **Cash Control Batches**

The manual processing of cash receipts is performed by creating a new Cash Control Batches record, and manually entering the cash receipts/corresponding Payments records. Once total receipts and applied payments are equal, cash control batches may be marked as approved. Once approved, Cash Control Batches are considered locked and can no longer be edited.

Follow these steps to create a cash control batch:

- 1. Open a new record from the Cash Control Batches service.
  - The Cash Control Batches service is located in the Accounting application.
  - Today's date automatically populates the Date Entered field.
- 2. Enter date for deposited funds into organization's bank account in Deposit Date field.
- 3. Your name should default in the Entered By field.
  - This field links to the Employees service.
- 4. Enter a cash receipt on the Cash tab, following these steps:
  - Enter the customer's name in the Customer field.
  - Enter the amount of the cash receipt in the Amount field.
  - Enter the payment type of the cash receipt in the **Type** field.
    - This field links to the Payment Types service.

• Typically, the payment type is Pre-paid Check. But depending organization's policies, it could also be a credit card (for example, if a customer/member returned order form with credit card information completed).

🔀 New Cash Control Batches Record	×
🛃 😼 📲 🚔 🔚 🥘 🔇 🖘 🔚 🖓 🗞 🔅 += 🔗 🚳 🕢 🖕	
Date Entered 2/17/2009	
Deposit Date 2/19/2009	
Entered By Dave O'Connell	
Date Approved Approve	
Approved By	
Cash Total \$0.00 Payment Total \$0.00	
Cash Comments Attachments Payments Posted	
Customer Danube Amount 100 <u>Type Pre-Paid Check</u>	
🖹 📂 🔀 Find   🚡 🎓 🦊 💆 🞯	
Customer Amount Order ID Payment ID Status	
0 Items	

5. Click the Add button to add the entry to the receipt list.

	Casł	Commen	its Attac	hments P	ayments Poste	ted	
	Customer Amount Type Add						
	B	💕 🗙	🛗 Find	1	<b>↓ <u>↓</u>   ⊘</b>	)	
	4	Customer	Amount	Order ID	Payment ID	Status	
		Danube	\$100.00	0	0	Unmatched	
						1 Item	
-							

- 6. To track the check number of the cash receipt or add more information, double-click the cash receipt in the list to open the **Cash Detail** record.
  - Enter the Check Number in the field provided.
  - Click the Comments tab and enter any additional information.
  - Click **OK** to close the form.

Note: that the Lock Box Information section of the form is not applicable to a manual

ish Detail Record				
General Tab Comme	ents			
-Payment Information	n ———			
Customer	Danube			
Amount	\$100.00	Ch	eck Number 84/355	
Payment Type	Pre-Paid Check		an	×
Lock Box Information	ı ———			
Status	Unmatched	-	Post Record	
Bank Key			Order Total	\$0.00
Order ID		$\mathbb{H} \times$	Prior Payments	\$0.00
Payment ID		₩×	This Payment	\$0.00 \$0.00
			Over-Payment	\$0.00
Exception Type	None	<b>T</b>	🙆 Post	
Exception Status		-	Post + Refund Overp	ayment
Exception			Post + Refund Entire	Payment
Comments			Allocate Overpayment	t - Same Order
			Allocate Overpayment	t - New Order
			(	OK Cancel

cash control batch (these fields are used with the Lock Box functionality).

7. Add additional cash receipts, as needed.

As you add cash receipts to the record, the system automatically updates the Cash Total field to equal the sum of the individual cash receipts, as shown below.

	Cash Tota	<b>a</b> \$210.0	D	Paym	nent Total \$0.00	
Cas	Cash Comments Attachments Payments Posted					
Cus	tomer		Amount		Type Add	
B	<b>≥</b>   <b>X</b>	🎽 Find	<b>* *</b> •	F 🕂 💿		
	Customer	Amount	Order ID	Payment ID	Status	
	Danube	\$100.00	-1	-1	Unmatched	
	ottoman	\$35.00	0	0	Unmatched	
	Pacific Rim	\$75.00	0	0	Unmatched	
					3 Items	
_						

- 8. Save the Cash Control Batches record.
- 9. Associate the cash receipts in the Cash Control Batch with Payments records in Aptify.
  - Generally, each cash receipt has a corresponding Payments record in Aptify that is applied to an Orders record.
  - You do not associate a particular receipt with a Payments record directly. Instead, you associate a Payments record with a Cash Control Batch.
  - As payments are associated with the Cash Control Batch, they appears on the Payments Posted tab, and the value of the Payment Total field increases, as illustrated above. (Note that you may need to close and reopen the Cash Control Batches record to see the updated Payment Total.).

🌠 Cash Control Batches I	D: 1			_ 🗆 ×
😸 😼 🐴 🗙 📋 🕅 (	🎽 💷   🐎 🗞   🏎	🚏 🎝 🛞 🎲 i 🖛 i	🔗 💽 📮	
Date Entered 2/17/2	009			
Deposit Date 2/19/2	009			
Entered By Dave C	D'Connell		×	
Date Approved		Approve		
Approved By		A	×	
Cash Total \$210.0	0 Pay	ment Total \$0.00		
Cash Comments Attack	ments Payments Poste	be		
🖹 🧀 🗙 🗐 🔚 Re	ports   🛗 Add To	List 🗐 💲		
Payments Poste	d for this Cash	<b>Control Batch</b>		
ID	Amount	PaidBy	CompanyName	Payment Dal
3868	70.00	Baka Lambert		2/17/2009
3867	50.00	Edward Aaronson		2/17/2009
<				Þ
				2 Records

10. Follow one of these step to associate a payment with a Cash Control Batch:

If a payment already exists that corresponds to this cash receipt, open that Payments record and click the Details tab. Then enter the ID of the Cash Control Batches record in Cash Control Batch field. Save and close the Payments record.

🛅 Payments ID: 386	7		
🚽 😼 🐴 🗙 📋	# 📬 🗉 🐘 🗞 🖦 🌆 🎝	🔞 🔅 🖛 😥 🔞	0 -
Taken By Dave O'Co	onnell 🖌	Organizatio	n Sampco Holdings, Inc. 🛛 🖁 🗙
Person Aaronson,	Edward/Danube Partners	×	
Company	ah	Order Search	Order # Invoice #
Payment Lines Detai	Is Authorizations GL Entries AP Ir	tegration Comments	
Payment Status	Posted	Payment Type	Pre-Paid Check 📃 🕥 🗸
Payment Level	Regular	Check Number	2332
Cash Control Batch	<u>1</u> 🔠	Bank	
Payment Date	2/17/2009	Account Number	
Deposit Date 🕻	2/19/2009	📱 👘 Branch Name	
Effective Date	2/17/2009	📰 ABA	
Service Charge	Account	•	
Service	Charge \$0.00		
_	🗖 Refund	_	
Currency Type	US Dollar	<b>•</b>	
Status Info			

- a) If the payment does not yet exist that corresponds to the cash receipt but the order does exist (for example, the customer provided a Purchase Order for future payment at the time the order was taken), create a new Payments record and specify the appropriate Cash Control Batch in the field on the Details tab. Note that if you open a new payment from the Cash Control Batches record's Payments Posted tab, the system will pre-populate the Cash Control Batch field on the new payment for you.
- b) If an order and payment corresponding to the cash receipt does not yet exist in the system (for example, if the customer sent in a completed mail order form with payment), create a new order for the customer and specify the appropriate initial payment information.
- 11. Click the approve button once the Payment Total equals the Cash Total.

🎇 Cash Control Bat	🌠 Cash Control Batches ID: 1			
🔜 🔩 🔩 🗙 🐚	) 🖁 📷 🔄 🎲 🗞 🔤 🧤 🖓 🖏 🤇 🖛			
Data Estavad	2/17/2000			
Date Entereu				
Deposit Date	2/19/2009			
Entered By	Dave O'Connell 🔉 🕺 🗙			
Date Approved	Approve			
Approved By				
Cash Total	\$210.00 Payment Total \$210.00			

12. Click **OK** when prompted to confirm the approval request.

#### The system automatically performs the following actions:

- It inserts the current date and time in the Date Approved field.
- It replaces the Approve button with a De-Approve button.
- It inserts your name in the Approved By field (this links to your Employees record).
- It locks down the Cash tab to prevent any further modifications to the cash receipts information.
- It prevents any additional payments from being associated with this Cash Control Batches record.
- It prevents any modification to the payment information in the Payments records associated with the Cash Control Batch

📽 Cash Control Bai	tches II	): 1			
🗒 🔧 🗞 🗙 👔	) M (	i 🗉 i 🏷 🐼 i 🏎 i	🖥 🍓 🚱 🎲   🕶 I	ø 🛛 🕽 📮	
Date Entered	2/17/20	009			
Deposit Date	2/19/20	009			
Entered By	Dave C	'Connell	ł4	×	
Date Approved	2/17/20	009 11:04:43 AM	De-Approve		
Approved By	Dave O	'Connell	A	×	
Cash Total	\$210.0	D Pay	ment Total \$210.00		
Cash Comments	Attach	ments Payments Poste	ed		
🖹 🧉 🗙 🚛	Rep	oorts 🕌 📲 Add To	List 🔨 💲		
Payments P	oste	d for this Cash	<b>Control Batch</b>		
ID		Amount	PaidBy	CompanyName	Payment Dal
	3868	70.00	Baka Lambert		2/17/2009
	3867	50.00	Edward Aaronson		2/17/2009
	3869	90.00	Valerie Rodriquez		2/17/2009
					Þ
					3 Records

- 13. If you need to modify the Cash Control Batch after it has been approved, follow these steps:
  - a) Click the De-Approve button: the system clears the Date Approved and Approved By fields and re-enables the Cash tab.
  - b) Modify the Cash Control Batch as necessary.
  - c) When finished, click the Approve button again to re-approve the Cash Control Batch.

# Appendix



# **Publication Functions**

# Objective

Users will be able to:

- Alter the Delivery schedule of a subscription publication.
- Understand the Fulfillments function.
- Add Publication contributors to a product record.

### **Altering the Delivery Schedule**

You can change the delivery schedule for a subscription so that a recipient can receive their subscription while on vacation or at another office location.

- 1. Select the Delivery Schedule tab on the Subscriptions record.
- 2. Click the New button to open a new Subscription Delivery Schedule record.
- 3. Enter a date one month from today in the Start Date field.
- 4. Enter a date two months from today in the End Date field.
- 5. Enter an alternate address and contact information in the fields provided.
- 6. Enter your **Persons ID** in the **Requested By** field.
- 7. Enter Hard Shipment in the Distribution Type field.

Subscription Delivery S	chedule Record
General	
Start Date	12/7/2011 End Date 1/7/2012
	Address
Line 1	55 Main Street
Line 2	
Line 3	
City, State ZIP	Alexandria VA 🔽 22301
County	Alexandria City
Country	United States
	Phone
	1 555 555-0090 ×
Email	
Requested By	Miller, Ian/Kumpulan Guthrie Berhad 🛛 🔠 🗙
Distribution Type	Hard Shipment

#### 8. Click OK.

- 9. Click Save.
  - At the time of fulfillment, Aptify will look at the date and create the mailing label with the alternate address.

#### **Viewing Subscription Fulfillments**

The Subscription Fulfillments service enables you to track the distribution of a subscription's issue, specifying the distribution date, volume, and the recipients. In addition, by processing a subscription fulfillment, mailing labels are automatically generated.

Fulfillment means to send out an issue. A fulfillment is made for all issues sent this month.

Creating the fulfillment generates a mailing label for magazines and decreases a subscription count by one. Subscription Fulfillment is done monthly for each subscription product.

After you run a fulfillment, observe the Output, Mailing Labels to see how the mailing labels will look. You can also go back to the delivery log to observe how an entry is made after fulfillment. You will not be able to use the Output field during fulfillment if you did not make the Delivery Type "Hard Shipment".

- 1. *Right click* the **Subscription Fulfillments** service and select **New Subscription Fulfillments Record** from the pop-up list.
- 2. Select XYZ Subscription from the Product drop-down list.
- 3. Enter next month's date in the Name field.
  - For example, if the current month is January 20XX, you would enter **February** of the same year in the Name field.
- 4. Enter today's date in the **Distribution Date** field.
  - The **Date Prepared** field defaults to today's date.
- 5. Enter 1 in the Volume field.
- 6. Enter 1 in the Issue field.

🛸 New Subscript	ion Fulfillments	Record						_ 🗆 ×
🛃 🔩 🔩 📋	# 날 🗉 🕅	8   ==   🐈 (	🏚 🛞 🔅	+1 😥	0 (	-		
Produ	ct XYZ Subscriptio	n			•	•		
Nan	e March 2009							
Distribution Da	te 2/11/2009							
Date Prepar	ed 2/11/2009							
Volun	ne 1							
Iss	Je 1							
就 Recipients 📗	Output 🎴 🎴 Cor	nments Attachm	ents					
Create Recipient C Use Subscrip O Use Vol. and	List tion End Dates Issue Number	Create List				$\mathbf{k}$		
	Recipient			Subscrip	ition	0		
Name	Company	Distributed By	Start Date	End Date	Sent	Left	Bulk	

- 7. Verify that the Use Vol. and Issue Number option is selected (this is the default setting).
- 8. Click the Create List button.
  - A dialog box appears that informs you how many people qualified for this distribution.

Subscript	ion Fulfillment	×
?	There are 3 subscribers that qualify for this distribution Click OK to add these subscribers to the recipient list.	۱.
	Cancel	

- 9. Click OK.
  - The record is saved automatically and an ID number is assigned.
  - The qualified recipients appear under the Recipient tab. You should see the following information if you completed the earlier exercises in this lab:
    - 1 issue was sent to your **Person**, leaving 11 remaining.
    - 3 copies of the item were sent to your **Person**, who had a bulk subscription.
    - 1 issue was sent to your **Person**, leaving 5 remaining (since you canceled half of the original order in an earlier exercise).

Ŵ	ŧ.	Recipients 👔	Output 🎑 Com	nments Attachm	ients				
Create Recipient List									
<ul> <li>Use Subscription End Dates</li> <li>Use Vol. and Issue Number</li> </ul>									
			Recipient			Subscrip	otion		
ſ		Name	Company	Distributed By	Start Date	End Date	Sent	Left	Bulk
ſ	۲	James Cross	The Ohio State	Hard Shipment	02/11/200	02/10/20	1	5	1
		John Jensen	Spécialités du	Hard Shipment	02/11/200	02/10/20	1	11	1
Ī		Ian Miller	Kumpulan Gut	Hard Shipment	02/11/200	02/10/20	1	11	3

10. Click the **Output** tab.

就 Recipients	Output 🔁 Comments Attachments	
Email	c:\email.txt	
Fax	c:\fax.txt	
Copy To Clipboard		
Mailing Labels		

- 11. Click the **Mailing Labels** button. (This option is applicable for hard shipment subscription products.)
  - This opens the Report wizard for the Subscription Fulfillment service, which includes a standard subscription fulfillment label report. This report displays the address for each recipient so they can be printed to mailing labels.
  - Within the Report wizard, click the Labels tab.
  - Select the Subscription Fulfillment Label Report and click Next.
  - Click **Finish** to display the mailing labels for the recipients.

Å <sup>™</sup> Crysta	l Report Vie	ewer	
<b>B</b> S		₩ ◀ ▶ ₩	F
Main Repo	ort		
Cr Er 15 Co Je 25 Pa Fr	ross, James/ harson Hall 54 W. 12th Av olumbus, OH snsen, John/S rue Lauristo aris, 75016 ance ller, Ian/Kump fisma Guthrie amansara Hei	The Ohio State University e. 43210 Spécialités du monde n ulan Guthrie Berhad ,21 Jalan Gelenggang ghts	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
M	alaysia		-
			•
Current Pa	ge No.: 1	Total Page No.: 1	Zoom Factor: 100%

- 12. Close the Subscription Fulfillment Label Report window.
- 13. Save and close the Subscription Fulfillments record.

#### **Creating a New Contributors Record**

- 1. Select the Publications tab on your Subscription Product/Publications record.
- 2. Select the Publication Contributors sub-tab.
- 3. Click the New button on the toolbar to open a new Publication Contributors record.
- 4. Enter your **Person** in the **Person** field.
- 5. Select Editor from the Role drop-down list.
- 6. Leave Commission Type set to Flat Amount.
- 7. Enter **\$100.00** in the Commission field.
- 8. Leave Primary In Role selected (person is primary editor of the publication).

Publication Contribu	itors Record	
General		
Person	Wade, David/Assicurazioni Generali SpA	X
Role	Author	 •
Commission Type	Flat Amount	-
Commission	\$10 <sup>5</sup> .00	
	🗹 Primary In Role	
Comments		
	ОК	Cancel

- 9. Click OK.
  - The contributor's record is added to the Publication Contributors tab.

seneral 🦪 Details 💽 Web 🍉 Prices 🐑 Hierarchy 🕪 Inventory 🛛 Assembly 🗟 Accounting 📄									
Subscription 🕝 Comments Publications Attachments									
General Publication Contributors Attachments									
🛅 🧭 🗙 🛗 Find 🛛 🕋 🎓 🦊 🚇 🎯									
Person Role Commission Type Commission Primary In Role									
Tate, Lul Autho Flat Amount \$0.00									

- 10. Click the Prices tab and add prices for the product.
- 11. Save and close the record.

# Appendix







Objective	E.1
Creating an Expos Record	E.3
Adding Expo Prices	E.4
Creating Floorplans	E.5
Creating Booths Using the Booth Generator	E.7
Using the Booth Combination Wizard	E.11
Linking Meetings to Expos	E.15
Taking an Order for a Booth	E.17
Canceling an Expo Order	E.20
Using the Floorplan Copy Wizard	E.22

## Objective

Within Aptify, you can create and track Expos and design the layout of booths in the Expo's venue. After completing this chapter, you will be able to:

- Create a new Expo
- Create a Floorplan
- Link a Meeting to an Expo ٠
- Work with Booths ٠
- Order a Booth

#### **Overview**

The Expos service provides an easy-to-use interface where an organization can create

and manage all aspects of an exposition, including floorplans, booths, dates of the exposition, and contact information for the company and persons sponsoring the exposition. The Expo Management functionality is used to plan and manage a single expo, multiple expos, or for an exposition that is part of a larger event. Each Expos record tracks the total units of booth inventory, as well as any meetings that may be linked to the exposition.

Expos are created as products with extended characteristics. Creation of an expos product requires the following items to be set up beforehand:

- All GL accounts required by the organization to track expo finances.
- One or more Product Categories records for Expo products that are associated with the GL accounts created to track expo finances.
- A Product Types record named Expo that enables the Expo tab to display on the Products record. (This is included with the standard Aptify installation.)
- A Products record for the expo, associated with the expo product category and product type.

### **Creating an Expos Record**

- 1. Click on the Expo Management dashboard.
- 2. Click New Expo button.
  - An Expo record is a Products record with **Type** set to **Expo**. There is also an Expo tab added to the Products form.
- 3. Enter XYZ Expo in the Name field (where XYZ are your initials).
- 4. Enter Exhibits in the Category field.
- 5. Click the Expo tab.

#### Expos > General Tab

- 6. The General tab appears.
- 7. Enter XYZ Expo in the Expo Name field (where XYZ are your initials).
- 8. Enter your **Company** in the **Vendor** field.
- 9. Enter your **Persons** record in the **Vendor Contact** field.
- 10. Enter next Monday's date in the Start Date field.
- 11. Enter next Friday's date in the End Date field.
- 12. Enter this Saturday's date in the Setup Date field.
- 13. Enter this Sunday's date in the Setup Req. Date field.
- 14. Click Save.

Name	XYZ Expo	
Category	Exhibits 🗎 🗙	
Туре	Expo	
Parent Product	₩×	
Expos 🦪 Produc	ct Details 💽 Web 🍃 Prices 🖗 Accounting 🎑 Comments 🛛 Attachments	
General Invoid	ing Units Floorplans 🔐 Expos 🎆 Meetings Attachments	
Expo Name	XYZ Expo	
Vendor	Danube Partners 🕺 📉	
Vendor Contact	Baldwin, Aiesha/Danube Partners	
Prior Expo	<b>₩</b> ×	
Start Date	12/26/2016	
End Date	12/30/2016	
Setup Date	12/24/2016	
Setup Req. Date	12/25/2016	

### **Adding Expo Prices**

Establishing prices for booth space at an Expo is different from setting prices for other products. An exhibitor pays for booth space at an Expo. If these booths are all the same size, then you can charge a uniform amount per booth to each exhibitor. However, if you offer booths of varying sizes you can define a base unit (such as a base booth size) and then configure expo pricing based on the number of units that the booth occupies.

**Example 1:** An exhibitor rents floor space to accommodate a 10x10 booth (100 sq feet). If all of the booths at the Expo are the same size, 1 unit can equal 1 booth. In this case, you would use the following pricing rule if one booth costs \$1000.00:

Dimensions	Number of Units	Total Cost for Booth	
10x10 Booth (100 sq ft)	1 unit	\$1000.00	

**Example 2:** Your venue supports two booth sizes: an 8x10 booth (80 sq ft) and a 10x10 (100 sq ft). In this case, you define a unit based on a common denominator between the two booth sizes. Therefore, 1 unit equals 20 sq ft, and the 8x10 booth is 4 units (4x20 = 80), and the 10x10 booth is 5 units (5x20=100). If you establish a price of \$200 per unit, then these booths would have the following prices:

Dimensions	Number of Units	Total Cost for Booth
8x10 Booth (80 sq ft)	4 units 1 unit = \$200	\$800.00
10x10 Booth (100 sq ft)	5 units 1 unit = \$200	\$1000.00

#### Adding Member and Non-Member Prices

- 1. Click the **Prices** tab on your Expo record.
- 2. Right click in the gray area and click New to open a new Prices record.
- 3. Enter Member Price in the Name field.
- 4. Enter **\$100** in the **Price** field.
- 5. Select Member from the Member Type drop-down list.
- 6. Enter Non-Member Price in the Name field.
- 7. Enter **\$200** in the **Price** field.
- 8. Select the Default box to indicate that this is the default price for the product.
- 9. Select Non-Member from the Member Type drop-down list.
- 10. Click **OK**.
- 11. Save and Close the Expos record.

#### **Creating Floorplans**

A Venue can have one or more Floorplans that define the possible layouts of the venue space. Floorplans are tied to Expos.

In this exercise, you will create a new floorplan.

- 1. Open the Floorplans tab
- 2. Open a New Floorplans Record link.
- 3. Click on the red Floorplans link to the left of the Floorplans field.
  - The New Floorplan Wizard launches automatically.



- 4. Click Next to continue.
- 5. Select Create Blank Floorplan.
- 6. Click Next.
- 7. Click **Finish** to create the blank floorplan.

- 8. Enter XYZ Expo Floorplan in the Name field.
- 9. Enter XYZ Convention Center in the Venue field.
  - Open the Venue record by clicking the red field link to the left of Venue field.
  - Observe the information that can be stored for a **Venue** and **Room** these records are created and controlled by **Administrators** of Aptify.
- 10. Select Feet from the Unit of Measure drop-down list (if not already selected).
- 11. Enter 200 in the Width field and 100 in the Length field.
- 12. Enter 1 in the Page Scale field and 100 in the Drawing Scale field.
  - These two parameters form a ratio that defines the scale of the floorplan map. In this exercise, the scale is 1:100.
- 13. Enter 10 in the Default Width field.
- 14. Enter 10 in the Default Length field.
- 15. Enter 1 in the Default Units field.
  - In this exercise, the default unit size is a booth that is 10x10 (100 square feet).
- 16. Enter XYZ Booth in the Next Booth Name field.
- 17. Enter 1 in the Booth Increment field.
- 18. Select Arrange & Assign from the Status drop-down list.

Floorplans ID: 1	) M 날 💷 🐘	🗞 i 🏎 i 🐂 🎭 🄇							
General Booths Comments Attachments									
Name XYZ Floorplan									
Description	1								
Venue	XYZ Convention Cer	iter		X					
Floorplan System	ExpoCAD			<b>**</b> ×					
Number of Booths	0	Unallocated Booths	0						
Number of Units	0	Unallocated Units	0						
Unit Of Measure	Feet 🗨	External Rate Plan							
Width	200	Length	100						
Page Scale	1	Drawing Scale	100						
Booth Settings       Default Width     10       Default Units     1									
Next Booth Nar	me XYZ Booth		Booth Increment	1					
Status Arrange & Assign									

19. Click Save.

## **Creating Booths Using the Booth Generator**

- 1. Click the **Booths** tab on the *XYZ* Expo Floorplan record.
- 2. Click the Booth Generator button.

🗱 Floorplans ID: 1							
🛃 🔩 🔩 🗙 📋 🛗 (	🚽 😼 📲 🗙 💼 🛗 🔛 📑 🦃 🇞 🖦 🧤 🏪 🚱 🔅 + = 🔗 🛞 🖕						
General Booths Commen	ts Attachments						
🖹 🧉 🗙 🚛 📊 Rej	ports 🕌 📲 Add To	List 🕙 💲 厚					
Booths Linked to Floorplan #1							
		ID Name Description # of Units					
ID	Name	Description	# of Units				
ID	Name	Description	# of Units				
ID	Name	Description	# of Units				

- 3. In the Starting Location section, select the option in the upper left-hand corner.
  - With this option selected, the Booth Generator will begin labeling booths from the upper left-hand corner.
- 4. Change the Initial Number to 1.
- 5. Select the Horizontal option in the Incrementation Rules section.
- 6. Click the Apply Rules button in the Horizontal section.
  - The Adjacent and Aisle Separation fields update automatically.
  - Leave the Number of adjacent Vertical booths prior to aisle separation set to 5.
  - These settings determine booth layout and numbering.



- 7. Click Generate Grid.
  - The Booth Generator adds booths and aisles to the floorplan.
- 8. Select Booth 101 and click the Space button.
  - You can use this option to add spaces within the floorplan.
- 9. Select the Space cell and click the **Booth** button.
  - The Space is changed back to a Booth.
- 10. Select the blank Booth and click the Booth Names button.
  - The Booth is renumbered back to 101.

Booth Ger	nerator									23
-Starting L	ocation	Booth	Names (	Example: )	XYZ Booth	n100)				
Flo	orplan <sup>©</sup>	D Pref	ix XYZ	Booth	Suffix		Initia	l Number	100	
0	0		ementatio	n Rules –						
XYZ Floor	plan		Horizont	al Ap	ply Rules		Vertical	Арр	ly Rules	
200 x 100 Booth: 10 ;	(W x L) x10 (W x L)		Δdia	acent 2			Δdia	acent 99		
Booth Unit	s: 1 Foot	Δi	sle Sena	ration 2		_	isle Senar	ation 1		-
Onit of Me	asure. reel			2			abie oopu	anon 1		
Gene	rate Grid		umber of	adjacent	Vertical bo	ooths prior	to aisle se	eparation:	5	
	-			-				-		_
	0	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
0	100	102	104	106	108		110	112	114	
10			105							_
20	101	103	105	107	109		111	113	115	
30	200	202	204	206	208		210	212	214	E
40										_
50	201	203	205	207	209		211	213	215	
60	300	302	304	306	308		310	312	314	
70										_
80	301	303	305	307	309		311	313	315	-
I € 100 1										•
Booth	Aisle	Space	Boot	h Names	]			ОК	Can	cel

#### 11. Click OK.

- Be patient while the system creates the necessary Booths records.
- If only one booth shows up in the Booths view, refresh the view to show all of the booths.
- 12. Double-click the first **Booths** entry in the Floorplan's Booth tab to open the corresponding Booths record.
- 13. Add 3 to the Maximum# field (in the Booth Registrant Information section).
- 14. Review the format of the Booths record.

🐴 Booths ID: 1	
🚽 🔩 🐴 🗙 📋 🛗 🕍 🖆 🗐 🐧	> >> >> >> >> >> >> >> >> >> >> >> >> >
General 🖓 Merged Booths Lin	ked Registrants Comments Attachments
Name XYZ Booth100	
Description	
Floorplan XYZ Floorplan	* ×
XCoord 5	YCoord 95
Width 10	Length 10
# of Units 1	Area 100
Booth Registrant Information	
Maximum # 3	Complimentary 0
Surcharge Flat Amount 💌 Sur	rcharge Amount \$0.00 📃 Merged
Merged Into Booth	14h   ×
Order Information	
Linked Order	#4 ×
Linked Person	#4 ×
Linked Company	14 ×

15. Save and Close the Booths record.

## **Using the Booth Combination Wizard**

You use the Booth Combination Wizard to combine one or more booths into a larger booth or to break up a combined booth to two or more smaller booths.

#### **Combining Booths**

- 1. Open the XYZ Expo Floorplan record's Booths tab (if not already open).
- 2. Click the Booth Combination Wizard icon to launch the Booth Combination Wizard.

Eleorolans ID: 1					
rioorpians 10. 1					
🛃 🔩 📲 🗙 🎒 🕅 (	🎽 💷   🐎 🐼   🌬	🍵 🏰 🚱 🎲   🕶	े। 🤣 🕕 🖕		
General Booths Comment	ts Attachments				
i 🖆 😅 🗙 i 💣 🛍 🎙	🕯   🗟 🔟   🖄 📉	l l			
Booths Linked to	Floorplan #1 🛛 🖪	Booth Combination Wizard			
ID	Name	Description	# of Uni 🔺		
1	JMS Booth1				
2	JMS Booth3				
3 IMS Booth5					
			102 records		

- 3. Click **Next** to continue.
- 4. Enter XYZ Expo Floorplan in the Floorplan field and click Next.





- 5. Select Combine booth records to create a larger booth and click Next.
- 6. Select the **Selected** checkbox for the following booths: Booth1, Booth3, Booth5, Booth7, and Booth9. Note: You may need to scroll through the list of booths to find the needed booths.

BoothCombinationWizard	Select Booths to ( The grid displays all Floorplan), Please c and click Next to pri	Combine of the available bool heck the booths that icced.	hs in the selected flo you wish to combine	orplan (JMS Exp into a larger boo	o th	
DOOTU	Booth ID	Booth Name	1	Number of Units	Selected	<b></b>
DUUIN	1	JMS Booth1		1	<b>~</b>	
COMBINATION	2	JMS Booth3		1	✓	
Statement in the local division of the local	3	JMS Booth5		1	✓	
Rendman	4	JMS Booth7		1	✓	
publications inc.	5	JMS Booth9		1	<b></b>	
North Contraction	7	JMS Booth13		1		
	10	JMS Booth19		1		
	12	JMS Booth23		1		<b>•</b>
Wizard						
	<u><u> </u></u>	ancel <u>B</u> ac	k <u>N</u> ext			<u>F</u> inish

- 7. Click Next.
- 8. Select the Surviving Booth checkbox for Booth1 and click Next.

BoothCombinationWizard					
Aptify™ BOOTH	Select Surviving You have selected be designated as th a customer. The o and will no longer b Please select the su	Booth 5 booths to combine into e surviving booth. This t ther booths will be marke e available for sale to cus urviving booth and click N	a larger booth. One o ooth will be the one th d as combined into the tomers. ext to continue.	of the booths must nat is assigned to surviving booth	
COMBINATION	Booth ID	Booth Name		Surviving Booth	
A REAL PROPERTY AND A REAL PROPERTY.	1	JMS Booth1			
Rendmer Dublications inc.	2	JMS Booth3			
	3	JMS Booth5			
A DI THE THE THE	4	JMS Booth7			
	5	JMS Booth9			
Wizard	5 Items				
	<u></u>	ancel <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext		Einish

- 9. Review the settings for the new combined booth and click Finish.
- 10. Click No to combine another set of booths.

#### **Separating Booths**

At times it may be necessary to separate booths after they have been combined. The Booth Combination Wizard offers the flexibility to separate booths.

- 1. Open the XYZ Expo Floorplan record's Booths tab (if not already open).
- 2. Click the Booth Combination Wizard icon to launch the Booth Combination Wizard.
- 3. Click Next to continue.
- 4. Enter XYZ Expo Floorplan in the Floorplan field and click Next.
- 5. Select Break apart a booth record to create smaller booths and click Next.
- 6. Select the Selected checkbox for the Booth1 booth and click Next.

- 7. Allocate the available Units and Length among the five records.
  - Create two 2-unit booths with one 1-unit booth in the middle. (as shown in Figure 21.13).

BoothCombinationWizard							_ 🗆 ×
Ptify™ BOOTH COMBINATION	Confirm B The booth registrants, booths that of the boot The grid di Click Finish	ooth Break and maxim were previ ns in the grid splays the c to complete	<b>CUp</b> ocess will se ously combin d. lata for thes e the proces	eparate the r of complime ned into Boo e fields as th s.	number of units, maxi ntary registrants field th 1. You should set ey will appear after th	mum number of s for all of the : the values for all ne break up.	
VALUE AND DESCRIPTION	ID	Units	Width	Lenath	Max. Registrants	Comp. Registrants	
Rendmen publications inc.	1	2	10	20	0	0	
	2	0	0	0	0	0	
	3	1	10	10	0	0	
	4	2	10	20	0	0	
	5	0	0	0	0	0	
Wizard	5 Items	-	-		-	-	
		<u>C</u> ano	el	<u>B</u> ack	Next		<u>F</u> inish

- 8. Click Finish.
- 9. Select No when asked if you want to break up additional booths.
- 10. Save and Close the Floorplans record
- 11. The **Floorplans** record should now display beneath the **Floorplans** tab of the **Expos** record.



#### Linking Meetings to Expos

An Expo product may be linked to one or more meetings. An organization that sells booth space to an event frequently sells attendance for the same event.

In addition to defining the link between the Expo and Meeting products, you can also track Expo Registrants who are staffing a particular booth. Aptify allows the user to specify if a meeting registrant is an exhibitor, and if so, which booth he/she will be staffing.

- 1. Open the Meetings tab of the Expos record.
- 2. Open a New Meetings Record.
- 3. Enter XYZ Management Conference in the Name field (where XYZ are your initials).
- 4. Enter Meetings in the Category field.
- 5. Click the Prices tab.
- 6. Add a Member Price of \$1000.
- 7. Add a default Non-Member Price of \$2000.
- 8. Click the Meetings tab.
- 9. Enter XYZ Management Conference in the Meeting Title field.
- 10. Enter the dates for the meeting.
  - Enter the first day of next month in the **Start Date** field.
  - Enter the third day of next month in the End Date field.
  - These are the same Start and End Dates as your Expo.
- 11. Leave the Status set to Planned (the default setting).
- 12. Enter your **Employee** in the **Coordinator** field.
- 13. Enter XYZ Expo in the Linked Expo field.

Products ID: 992	5	
	1 🖆 🗉 🦃 🍪 🖦 🔚 👘 🚱 🔅 🖛 🔗 🛞 🕛	
Name	XYZ Management Conference	
Category	Meetings A	×
Туре	Meeting	-
Parent Product	A	×
Meetings <i> P</i> r	oduct Details 📄 Web 🐌 Prices 🙍 Accounting 🍃 Comment	s Attachments
General Meet	ing Logistics Registrations	
Meeting Title	XYZ Management Conference	
Start Date	12/26/2016 End Date 12/30/2016	
Status	Planned  Close Meetin	ng
Meeting Type	A	×
<u>Coordinator</u>	Adam Smith A	×
Linked Expo	XYZ Expo	×
Meeting Conflict	No ConflictValidation	•
Max Reg.	0 Avail. Space 0	
Description		

- 14. Click Save and Close.
- 15. The XYZ Management Conference displays under the Expos Meeting Tab.
  - Users may have to click the **refresh** button to display.

Expos 🦪 Product Details	💽 Web 🍃 Prices	🐵 Accounting 🍃 Comments	Attachmer
General Invoicing Un	its 🛛 Floorplans 🙀 E	xpos 🙀 Meetings Attachments	1
🖹 🧉 🗙 🔙 📊 Re	ports 🕅 📲 Add T	o List 📳 💲 🛕 🝰	
Meetings Record	s Linked To Th	is Record	
ID .	MeetingID	Product	Star
40	40	XYZ Management Conference	12/26/201
ID 40	MeetingID 40	Product XYZ Management Conference	Sta 12/26/20

### Taking an Order for a Booth

A user reserves a specific Expo booth by placing an order for that booth. Aptify limits the selection of the booth to those that are available within one of the floorplans linked to the Expo product. The system will not allow the user to assign a booth that has already been assigned to another customer or one that has been merged into another booth. In addition, the system will validate that the user has purchased enough units.

- 1. Open a new order.
- 2. Enter your **Persons** record in the **Ship To** field.
- 3. Create an order line for 1 unit of XYZ Expo 20XX.
- 4. Click on the Add button.
- 5. The Order Line, Expos tab should automatically display.
  - This occurs IF the Expo Product's Order Line Details are set up to automatically display under the Products, Details tab
- 6. Click the **Booths** tab.
- 7. Select *XYZ* Floorplan from the Floorplan drop-down list if it is not the default floorplan.
- 8. Enter XYZ Booth1 in the Booth fields.

General     Expos     Ship To     Comments       General     Booths     Co-Exhibitors     Products     Comments						
Floorplan	XYZ Floorplan					
Booth	XYZ Booth100 🔉 🗙 Configure .					
Booth Name	XYZ Booth100					
Weight Required	0					
Configuration Type	<b>•</b>					
Booth Options						
Needs	Electric Is Decorated					
Needs Needs	Water Needs Gas Compressed Air Needs Drain					
Units	1 Surcharge \$0.00					

- 9. Click **OK** to return to the **Order** form.
- 10. Enter your saved Credit Card payment information.
- 11. Click Save and click No when asked if you want to ship the order.
- 12. Add an order line for 1 unit of XYZ Management Conference.
- 13. The Order Line, Meetings, General tab should automatically display.
- 14. Select the Is Exhibitor checkbox.
- 15. Select XYZ Booth1 in the Exhibitor Booth field.

Order Lines Record		
General Meetings Sh	ip To 🍃 Comments	
General Travel	Comments Attachments E	ducation Units
Meeting Name	XYZ Management Conference	
Attendee	O'Connell, Dave/Aptify	
Badge Name		
Badge Company Name		
Badge Title		
Registration Type	Pre-Registration	📝 Show Name On List
Status	Registered 🗨	Cancellation Date
	Is Exhibitor	Exhibitor Booth XYZ Booth100
		ОК

- 16. Click **OK** to close the Order Lines record and return to the order.
- 17. Save the order, and click **Yes** when prompted to pay the order in full using the specified credit card information.
- 18. Say Yes when asked if you want to ship the order.
  - The system ships the order and locks down parts of the order to maintain an accurate audit trail.
- 19. Close the order.
- 20. Click on the Expo Management application Dashboard.
- 21. Open the XYZ Expo Floorplan from the Floorplans View.
- 22. Click the **Booths** tab.
  - Notice that the IsOccupied box is now selected for XYZ Booth1.
| 🗱 Floorplans ID: 1 |             |                  |            |                     |
|--------------------|-------------|------------------|------------|---------------------|
| 🔒 🔩 🔩 🗙 🛯          | i) 🕅 🔂 🗉    | 🐘 🗞 🔤 🍴          | n 🖣 🚯 🔅 I  | += 😥 💿 🔒 🖕          |
| General Booths o   | Comments At | tachments        |            |                     |
| 🖹 🎯 🗙 🚛            | Reports (   | 👬 🛛 📲 Add To Lis | st 📳 💲 🕛   |                     |
| Booths Link        | ked to Flo  | orplan #1        |            |                     |
| ID                 | Name        | Description      | # of Units | Occupied            |
| 1 ×)               | yz booth 1  |                  | 1          | <ul><li>✓</li></ul> |

23. Double-click the XYZ Booth1 entry to open the corresponding Booths record.

Booths ID: 1	💼 👭 😭 🖻   🐎	📎   🔩   <sup>1</sup>	 () ()
General 🖓 🛛	Merged Booths Linke	d Registrant	ts Comments Attachments
Name	XYZ Booth100		
Description			
<u>Floorplan</u>	XYZ Floorplan		A 🗙
XCoord	5	YCoord	95
Width	10	Length	10
# of Units	1	Area	100
-Booth Registra	ant Information		
Maximum #	3	Complin	nentary 0
Surcharge	Flat Amount 💌 Surch	arge Amour	t \$0.00 Merged
Merged Into	Booth		an ×
-Order Informa	tion V Occupied		
Linke	d Order 9865		$H \times$
Linked	Person O'Connell, Dave	/Aptify	$\mathbb{A}$
Linked Co	ompany Aptify		$\mathbb{A}\times$

• Notice that the order information now appears on the Booths record.

24. Close all open records.

## **Canceling an Expo Order**

In this exercise, you will run the Order Cancellation wizard from an Orders view to cancel the Meeting and Expo you ordered in Exercise 10.

- 1. Open an **Orders** view.
- 2. Click the Order Cancellation Wizard icon to launch the wizard.
- 3. Click Next to continue.
- 4. Enter the ID of the Order you created in Exercise 10 in the Order field and click Next.
- 5. Select the checkbox for both the Expo and the Meeting and click Next.

Aptify Order Cancellation	n Wizard			
Aptify"	Step 2: Sp Please spe To see ord	<b>Decify Order Lines</b> scify one or more lines to cancel. Also, indi Jer line details, click in the Product column.	cate the quantity (	which should be cancelled. heck All Check None
-	Line	Product	Quantity	Cancel Quantity
ADDED	✓ 1	JMS Expo 2007	2.0000	2.0000
UNDEN	✓ 2	JMS Management Conference	1.0000	1.0000
		lude Cancellation Fee Product		
$\smile$		Product		~
Wizard		Fee		
		Cancel <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext		Einish

- 6. Select the Keep On Account option and click Next to continue.
- 7. Click Finish to create the cancellation order.
- 8. Click Yes to open the order after the cancellation order has been created.
- 9. Change the Order Status to Shipped and click Yes when asked if all items have shipped.
- 10. Close the order.
- 11. Click No when asked if you want to process another cancellation (this closes the wizard).
- 12. Open the XYZ Expo Floorplan from the Floorplans service.
- 13. Click the **Booths** tab.
  - Notice that the **IsOccupied** field is now set to **False** for *XYZ* Booth1.
- 14. Double-click the XYZ Booth1 entry to open the corresponding Booths record.
  - Notice that the order information has been removed from the Booths record.

Expos

Mooths ID: 1	- O -
🛃 🔩 🐴 🗙   🎒 🛤 😭 🗉   🤴	🗞   🏎   🖥 🛃 😯 🎲   🕫 🏊   🦑 🗋
General Rerged Booths Linked R	egistrants Comments Attachments
Name JMS Booth1	
Description	
Floorplan JMS Expo Floorplan	#4 ×
XCoord 5	YCoord 95
Width 10	Length 20
# of Units 2	Area 100
Booth Registrant Information	
Maximum # 5	Complimentary 0
Surcharge Flat Amount 💌 Sur	charge Amount \$0.00 🗖 Merged
Merged Into Booth	AA ×
Order Information	
Linked Order	#4 ×
Linked Person	#4 ×
Linked Company	#4 ×
	/

15. Close all open records.

# **Using the Floorplan Copy Wizard**

You can use the Floorplan Copy wizard to create a copy of an existing floorplan (for example, if you have previously held an expo in this venue, you can save time by copying an existing floorplan and its booths and then make modifications as necessary).

- 1. Create a view of the Floorplans service using *XYZ* Floorplans as the Name and add the following filter:
  - Service: Floorplans
  - Field: Name
  - **Operator:** Contains
  - Value: *XYZ* (your initials)
- 2. Click the Floorplan Copy Wizard icon in the View toolbar to launch the wizard.

<del>ال</del> ا ال	Floor E Corp	olans - JMS Floorpla 🗙 🖆 🛍 🙀 Ians - JMS Flo	ans 💶 🗶
	ID	Name	Description
	1	JMS Expo Floorplan	
	2	A Second Floorplan	Description for JMS Expo Floorplan
•			2 records

- 3. Click Next.
- 4. Enter XYZ Expo Floorplan in the Floorplan field and click Next.
- 5. Select all booths to copy and click Next.
- 6. Enter XYZ Expo 20XX Production Floorplan in the Name field.



- 7. Click Next and allow the system to generate the booth records.
- 8. Click the **Display** option to view the new Floorplans record.
- 9. Click the **Booths** tab and confirm that the wizard copied the booth configurations from the *XYZ* Expo Floorplan.
- 10. Close all open records and wizards.

# Appendix



# SQL Value Statements for Views

# **Objective**

Users will be able to:

Insert SQL Statements into View Filter Value fields to create links to Dates and ٠ Employee IDs

### **Overview**

Following Page contains the filter values that can be inserted for

- ٠ Dates
- **Employee IDs** ٠
- Sounds-Like •
- LastName = '<PROMPT....>' ٠
- Becomes •
- SOUNDEX(LastName) = SOUNDEX('<PROMPT.....>') ٠
- This allows you to do "sounds like" instead of begins with / exactly matches, ٠ etc.ValueOperator
- **UsedResults** ٠
- **Prompted Proximity** ٠

**EMPLOYEE\_NAME** (Operator = Exactly Matches) - Returns the records associated with the current user's employee name. This will return a blank value if the user does not have an associated employee record.

**EMPLOYEE\_ID** - Returns the records associated with the current user's Employee ID. This will return a blank value it the user does not have an associated employee record.

SUSER\_NAME or

SUSER\_NAME() or

CURRENT\_USER or

SUSER\_SNAME or

#### USER

Use Exactly Matches as the Operator to Return the records associated with the current user's SQL user name.

#### TODAY or

GET DATE or

NOW + or - number of days Returns today's date plus or minus the number of days following

# Appendix



# Quick Reference Guides

# **Objective**

Users will be able to:

- Use the accompanying Quick Reference Guides for understanding of frequently used parts of the system
- Print out the guides separately for quick reference use

### **Overview**

Aptify Quick Reference Guides are designed to help users with frequently used parts of the system. On the following pages users will find Guides that cover the following topics:

- Creating List Views
- Managing Views
- Reports
- Record Management
- Contact Log
- Membership and Subscription Renewal

Quick Reference Guides should be copied out of the manual when needed. A good practice is to hang these guides on your cube wall for use when first using the system. The Guides act as functional, step by step reminders of how to conduct the frequently used operations of Aptify.



#### Creating Shortcuts

- 1. Select the desired View from the Navigation Bar
- 2. Select the desired **Shortcut Group** by clicking on it this may contract the **Group** click again on the bar to expand 3. Right click on the desired **View** in the **Navigation Bar** and select **Add to Shortcut Bar**
- a. If one or more shorcuts exists under the Bar, the new View will be placed at the bottom of the Group

#### Managing Shortcuts

- 1. Right Click on an existing Shortcut Group
- 2. Shortcut Menu Bar will display with following options:
  - a. Add Group
  - b. Remove Group
  - c. Add Item Displays Views Search (This can be used as an alternative to steps 1-3 above)
  - d. Small Images
  - e. Small Images with Text
  - f. Large Images
  - g. Large Images with Text h. Large Images with Text Below
- 3. Users can move **Groups** by **Dragging** them
- 4. Users can move Views within a Group OR from Group to Group by Dragging them
  - NOTE: Users can also Drag and Drop Views, Services, and Folders to the Shortcuts area from the Folder List

#### Creating a View Template

- 1. Open the **Properties** of a View Configure the **Properties** as desired
- 2. Click on the **Save Template**... button in the lower left hand corner
- 3. The Save Template dialog box will display: Enter the Name of the Template
- 4. Save to the applicable **Category** for the Template
- 5. Users can create **New Categories** to aid in organizing their View Templates a. Remember – View Templates are visible to ALL users of that service, not just the creator
  - b. Check if your Department function has already created a folder
- 6. To Load the View template, create a new View from that service
- 7. Click on Load template... button in the lower left hand corner
- 8. Select the desired View template from the dialog box All View templates are visible by all users

#### **Creating Shared Folders**

- 1. Right click on the desired Service
- 2. Select Create Folder
- 3. Create Folder box displays
- 4. Enter a Name and Description
- 5. Click on the Share this Folder box

#### **Connecting to Shared Folders**

- 1. Right click on the desired Service
- 2. Select Connect to Shared Folder
- 3. Connect to Shared Folder box displays
- 4. Expand the desired **User** to connect to under the **All Users** list
- 5. Select the desired folder to connect to: Folder displays within the Service
- 6. To Edit a View from a Shared Folder:
  - a. User must Right click on the View in the Navigation Bar
  - b. Select Copy the View c. User must Right click on the Service in the Navigation Bar
  - d. Select Paste the View
  - e. Copied View will display within the Service labeled "Copy of..."

**NOTE:** IF Shared Folder edited by Owner, users will automatically receive the updates – this enables the Owner (managers/administrators) to update/edit views.

#### **Creating View Tips**

#### 1. Consider the Use of the View

- a. Data mining (Excel Integration & Reports)
- b. Communication Track records needing attention, processing (Dashboards & Wizards), updates c. Searching for records (prompted views)
- d. Dashboard

#### 2. Filter linked fields based on ID instead of Name

- a. No spelling mistakes and no problems when the field name changes
- b. The Basic Find dialogue is much cleaner than a drop down list of only 100 results 3. Use Prompts with Default Values

- a. Ensures future user of the view will know about that criteria
- b. Only one extra click, no actual editing required 4. Watch your Filter Logic

- a. Scenarios exist where the Filter Logic will reset to all AND statements ex. if you delete a criteria
- b. If editing Filter criteria, always display Advanced area will be visible

#### 5. Get rid of Unnecessary Columns

- a. Tempting to include any/all Fields or leave all default Fields displayed b. Avoid a displayed scroll bar trim view to usable fields.

#### 6. Clean up your Column Headings

- a. On Fields tab Display Name & Description- replace cryptic field names/descriptions with sensible ones
- b. On Format tab, check Use Custom Formatting ..., Wrap Caption displays heading w/out white space 7. USE the Preview Pane & Hierarchy

- a. Provides tons more information per List View entryb. Preview Pane can be set to a different template per View

#### Managing Views QRG

#### 1. End Users

- a. Use the Shortcuts bar
  - i. DO NOT use the Folder List! Do you use Windows Explorer to find a Word doc!?
  - ii. Use Shortcuts bar to organize Views topically and mix together different services
  - iii. Display the high usage views avoids the confusing Folder List
- b. No really...start using the Shortcuts bar!
  i. Start using NOW right click on Views you use and SHORCUT THEM!
  ii. 10 minutes end of day organize them
  iii. Right click on Shortcut Group for different formats try Small Icon w/Text
- c. Create a "Trash" folder in each service for one-time-use views
  - i. Dump one time use views in folder
  - ii. Create one-time use views inside the Trash folder
  - iii. Keeps list of views from becoming cluttered
- iv. Periodically purge your "Trash" folders d. Once connected to a Shared Folder, logically rename it if needed
- i. Avoid displaying multiple folders all named "Shared Views"
  - ii. The owner still controls original folder name in their Folder List
- e. Make sure the view can be easily identified based on its Name i. Use Description area to add detailed explanations for complex views

#### 2. Administrators

- a. Concentrate core shared views into minimal folders
  - i. Avoid core views spread across folders creates confusion/ frustration for end users
  - ii. End users connect to fewer shared folders, reduced clutter/concentrated update area
- b. Standardize approach to how CORE views are stored:
  - i. One person per functional team responsible for team's shared views
  - ii. One person responsible for the shared views in each service
  - iii. All organization-wide shared views transferred to the sa account
- c. Create a summary document of available shared views
  - i. Enables users to avoid reinventing the wheel
  - ii. Admins can create a View of Views to see ALL users Views can print/export for managers
- d. Clean up Display Names and Descriptions on Entities records
  - i. It will be easier for end-users to figure out what fields they should use on Filters and Fields tabs

  - ii. Make sure Display Names will look appropriate in alphabetical order iii. Add "XX" or "DO NOT USE" to the Display Name of stock Aptify fields that your association doesn't use to avoid accidental use
- e. Create View Templates where specific set of filters ALWAYS need inclusion
  - i. Improves the odds that the set of filters will be built correctly
  - ii. Allows end-users to then enhance the view based on specific needs

#### Aptify Training and Education

To arrange for On-Site, Scheduled, or Ad Hoc training please feel free to contact Renee. Thorpe@aptify.com or dave.oconnell@aptify.com





# Views Worksheet

Use the following worksheet to frame your ideas of views you will use in your everyday job.

		Create your own views Wo	rksheet	
Name Two	Groups			
ldentify Tw	o Views under each Group			
Group 1				
Name				
Purpose				
Filters	S	<b>H</b>	0	Λ
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
Name				
Purpose				
Filters	S	£	0	Λ
1				
2				
æ				
4				
5				
Group 2				
Name				
Purpose				
Filters	S	£	0	Λ
Т				
2				
£				
4				
5				
Name				
Purpose				
Filters	S	Ľ	0	~
1				
2				
æ				
4				
5				